



EPA/635/R-17/015a
External Review Draft
www.epa.gov/iris

Toxicological Review of *tert*-Butyl Alcohol (*tert*-Butanol)

(CAS No. 75-65-0)

June 2017

NOTICE

This document is an **External Review Draft**. This information is distributed solely for the purpose of pre-dissemination peer review under applicable information quality guidelines. It has not been formally disseminated by EPA. It does not represent and should not be construed to represent any Agency determination or policy. It is being circulated for review of its technical accuracy and science policy implications.

Integrated Risk Information System
National Center for Environmental Assessment
Office of Research and Development
U.S. Environmental Protection Agency
Washington, DC

1
2
3
4
5
6

DISCLAIMER

This document is a preliminary draft for review purposes only. This information is distributed solely for the purpose of pre-dissemination peer review under applicable information quality guidelines. It has not been formally disseminated by EPA. It does not represent and should not be construed to represent any Agency determination or policy. Mention of trade names or commercial products does not constitute endorsement or recommendation for use.

CONTENTS

3	AUTHORS CONTRIBUTORS REVIEWERS.....	viii
4	PREFACE	x
5	PREAMBLE TO IRIS TOXICOLOGICAL REVIEWS.....	xiv
6	EXECUTIVE SUMMARY	xxii
7	LITERATURE SEARCH STRATEGY STUDY SELECTION AND EVALUATION	xxvii
8	1 HAZARD IDENTIFICATION.....	1-1
9	1.1 OVERVIEW OF CHEMICAL PROPERTIES AND TOXICOKINETICS.....	1-1
10	1.1.1 Chemical Properties	1-1
11	1.1.2 Toxicokinetics	1-2
12	1.1.3 Description of Toxicokinetic Models	1-3
13	1.1.4 Chemicals Extensively Metabolized to <i>tert</i> -Butanol	1-3
14	1.2 PRESENTATION AND SYNTHESIS OF EVIDENCE BY ORGAN/SYSTEM	1-4
15	1.2.1 Kidney Effects	1-4
16	1.2.2 Thyroid Effects.....	1-40
17	1.2.3 Developmental Effects	1-48
18	1.2.4 Neurodevelopmental Effects.....	1-55
19	1.2.5 Reproductive Effects	1-58
20	1.2.6 Other Toxicological Effects	1-64
21	1.3 INTEGRATION AND EVALUATION	1-64
22	1.3.1 Effects Other Than Cancer.....	1-64
23	1.3.2 Carcinogenicity	1-66
24	1.3.3 Susceptible Populations and Lifestages for Cancer and Noncancer Outcomes.....	1-68
25	2 DOSE-RESPONSE ANALYSIS	2-1
26	2.1 ORAL REFERENCE DOSE FOR EFFECTS OTHER THAN CANCER	2-1
27	2.1.1 Identification of Studies and Effects for Dose-Response Analysis	2-1
28	2.1.2 Methods of Analysis	2-2
29	2.1.3 Derivation of Candidate Values.....	2-4
30	2.1.4 Derivation of Organ/System-Specific Reference Doses	2-8
31	2.1.5 Selection of the Overall Reference Dose.....	2-8

Toxicological Review of tert-Butyl Alcohol

1 2.1.6 Confidence Statement.....2-9
2 2.1.7 Previous IRIS Assessment2-9
3 2.2 INHALATION REFERENCE CONCENTRATION FOR EFFECTS OTHER THAN CANCER.....2-9
4 2.2.1 Identification of Studies and Effects for Dose-Response Analysis2-9
5 2.2.2 Methods of Analysis2-10
6 2.2.3 Derivation of Candidate Values2-13
7 2.2.4 Derivation of Organ/System-Specific Reference Concentrations2-16
8 2.2.5 Selection of the Overall Reference Concentration.....2-16
9 2.2.6 Confidence Statement.....2-17
10 2.2.7 Previous IRIS Assessment2-17
11 2.2.8 Uncertainties in the Derivation of the Reference Dose and Reference Concentration..2-17
12 2.3 ORAL SLOPE FACTOR FOR CANCER2-18
13 2.3.1 Analysis of Carcinogenicity Data2-18
14 2.3.2 Dose-Response Analysis—Adjustments and Extrapolations Methods2-19
15 2.3.3 Derivation of the Oral Slope Factor.....2-20
16 2.3.4 Uncertainties in the Derivation of the Oral Slope Factor2-21
17 2.3.5 Previous IRIS Assessment: Oral Slope Factor2-23
18 2.4 INHALATION UNIT RISK FOR CANCER2-23
19 2.4.1 Previous IRIS Assessment: Inhalation Unit Risk.....2-23
20 2.5 APPLICATION OF AGE-DEPENDENT ADJUSTMENT FACTORS.....2-24
21 REFERENCES.....R-1
22
23

1 **TABLES**

2 Table ES-1. Organ/system-specific RfDs and overall RfD for *tert*-butanol.....xxiv
 3 Table ES-2. Organ/system-specific RfCs and overall RfC for *tert*-butanolxxv
 4 Table LS-1. Details of the search strategy employed for *tert*-butanol.....xxxi
 5 Table LS-2. Summary of additional search strategies for *tert*-butanol.....xxxi
 6 Table LS-3. Inclusion-exclusion criteriaxxxii
 7 Table LS-4. Considerations for evaluation of experimental animal studiesxxxv
 8 Table LS-5. Summary of experimental animal databasexxxv
 9 Table 1-1. Physicochemical properties and chemical identity of *tert*-butanol.....1-1
 10 Table 1-2. Changes in kidney histopathology in animals following exposure to *tert*-butanol1-12
 11 Table 1-3. Changes in kidney tumors in animals following exposure to *tert*-butanol.....1-15
 12 Table 1-4. Comparison of nephropathy and suppurative inflammation in individual male rats
 13 from the 2-year NTP *tert*-butanol bioassay1-17
 14 Table 1-5. Comparison of nephropathy and suppurative inflammation in individual female rats
 15 from the 2-year NTP *tert*-butanol bioassay1-17
 16 Table 1-6. Comparison of nephropathy and transitional epithelial hyperplasia in individual male
 17 rats from the 2-year NTP *tert*-butanol bioassay1-17
 18 Table 1-7. Comparison of nephropathy and transitional epithelial hyperplasia in individual
 19 female rats from the 2-year NTP *tert*-butanol bioassay1-18
 20 Table 1-8. Comparison of CPN and renal tubule hyperplasia with kidney adenomas and
 21 carcinomas in male rats from the 2-year NTP *tert*-butanol bioassay.....1-18
 22 Table 1-9. Summary of data on the α_{2u} -globulin process in male rats exposed to *tert*-butanol.....1-24
 23 Table 1-10. Proposed empirical criteria for attributing renal tumors to CPN1-35
 24 Table 1-11. Evidence pertaining to thyroid effects in animals following oral exposure to *tert*-
 25 butanol.....1-41
 26 Table 1-12. Evidence pertaining to developmental effects in animals following exposure to *tert*-
 27 butanol.....1-50
 28 Table 1-13. Evidence pertaining to neurodevelopmental effects in animals following exposure to
 29 *tert*-butanol.....1-57
 30 Table 1-14. Evidence pertaining to reproductive effects in animals following exposure to *tert*-
 31 butanol.....1-59
 32 Table 2-1. Summary of derivations of points of departure following oral exposure for up to 2
 33 years.....2-4
 34 Table 2-2. Effects and corresponding derivation of candidate values.....2-6
 35 Table 2-3. Organ/system-specific RfDs and overall RfD for *tert*-butanol2-8
 36 Table 2-4. Summary of derivation of PODs following inhalation exposure.....2-12
 37 Table 2-5. Summary of derivation of inhalation points of departure derived from route-to-route
 38 extrapolation from oral exposures2-13
 39 Table 2-6. Effects and corresponding derivation of candidate values.....2-14
 40 Table 2-7. Organ-/system-specific RfCs and overall RfC for *tert*-butanol.....2-16
 41 Table 2-8. Summary of the oral slope factor derivation2-21
 42 Table 2-9. Summary of uncertainties in the derivation of the oral slope factor for *tert*-butanol2-22
 43

1 **FIGURES**

2 Figure LS-1. Summary of literature search and screening process for *tert*-butanol.xxix

3 Figure 1-1. Biotransformation of *tert*-butanol in rats and humans.....1-3

4 Figure 1-2. Comparison of absolute kidney weight change in male and female rats across oral

5 and inhalation exposure based on internal blood concentration.1-10

6 Figure 1-3. Comparison of absolute kidney weight change in male and female mice following oral

7 exposure based on administered concentration.....1-10

8 Figure 1-4. Comparison of absolute kidney weight change in male and female mice following

9 inhalation exposure based on administered concentration.....1-11

10 Figure 1-5. Exposure response array for kidney effects following oral exposure to *tert*-butanol.1-19

11 Figure 1-6. Exposure-response array of kidney effects following inhalation exposure to *tert*-

12 butanol (13-week studies, no chronic studies available).1-20

13 Figure 1-7. Temporal pathogenesis of α_{2u} -globulin-associated nephropathy in male rats.1-23

14 Figure 1-8. Exposure-response array for effects potentially associated with α_{2u} -globulin renal

15 tubule nephropathy and tumors in male rats after oral exposure to *tert*-butanol.....1-26

16 Figure 1-9. Exposure-response array for effects potentially associated with α_{2u} -globulin renal

17 tubule nephropathy and tumors in male rats after inhalation exposure to *tert*-

18 butanol.....1-27

19 Figure 1-10. Exposure-response array of thyroid follicular cell effects following chronic oral

20 exposure to *tert*-butanol.1-43

21 Figure 1-11. Exposure-response array of developmental effects following oral exposure to *tert*-

22 butanol.....1-53

23 Figure 1-12. Exposure-response array of developmental effects following inhalation exposure to

24 *tert*-butanol.....1-54

25 Figure 1-13. Exposure-response array of reproductive effects following oral exposure to *tert*-

26 butanol.....1-62

27 Figure 1-14. Exposure-response array of reproductive effects following inhalation exposure to

28 *tert*-butanol.....1-63

29 Figure 2-1. Candidate values with corresponding POD and composite UF. Each bar corresponds

30 to one data set described in Table 2-1 and Table 2-2.2-7

31 Figure 2-2. Candidate RfC values with corresponding POD and composite UF.....2-15

32

1 **ABBREVIATIONS**

2

AIC	Akaike's information criterion	MNPCE	micronucleated polychromatic erythrocyte
ALD	approximate lethal dosage	MTD	maximum tolerated dose
ALT	alanine aminotransferase	NAG	N-acetyl- β -D-glucosaminidase
AST	aspartate aminotransferase	NCEA	National Center for Environmental Assessment
atm	atmosphere	NCI	National Cancer Institute
ATSDR	Agency for Toxic Substances and Disease Registry	NOAEL	no-observed-adverse-effect level
BMD	benchmark dose	NTP	National Toxicology Program
BMDL	benchmark dose lower confidence limit	NZW	New Zealand White (rabbit breed)
BMDs	Benchmark Dose Software	OCT	ornithine carbamoyl transferase
BMR	benchmark response	ORD	Office of Research and Development
BW	body weight	PBPK	physiologically based pharmacokinetic
CA	chromosomal aberration	POD	point of departure
CASRN	Chemical Abstracts Service Registry Number	POD _[ADJ]	duration-adjusted POD
CBI	covalent binding index	QSAR	quantitative structure-activity relationship
CHO	Chinese hamster ovary (cell line)	RDS	replicative DNA synthesis
CL	confidence limit	RfC	inhalation reference concentration
CNS	central nervous system	RfD	oral reference dose
CPN	chronic progressive nephropathy	RGDR	regional gas dose ratio
CYP450	cytochrome P450	RNA	ribonucleic acid
DAF	dosimetric adjustment factor	SAR	structure activity relationship
DEN	diethylnitrosamine	SCE	sister chromatid exchange
DMSO	dimethylsulfoxide	SD	standard deviation
DNA	deoxyribonucleic acid	SDH	sorbitol dehydrogenase
EPA	Environmental Protection Agency	SE	standard error
FDA	Food and Drug Administration	SGOT	glutamic oxaloacetic transaminase, also known as AST
FEV ₁	forced expiratory volume of 1 second	SGPT	glutamic pyruvic transaminase, also known as ALT
GD	gestation day	SSD	systemic scleroderma
GDH	glutamate dehydrogenase	TCA	trichloroacetic acid
GGT	γ -glutamyl transferase	TCE	trichloroethylene
GSH	glutathione	TWA	time-weighted average
GST	glutathione-S-transferase	UF	uncertainty factor
Hb/g-A	animal blood:gas partition coefficient	UF _A	animal-to-human uncertainty factor
Hb/g-H	human blood:gas partition coefficient	UF _H	human variation uncertainty factor
HEC	human equivalent concentration	UF _L	LOAEL-to-NOAEL uncertainty factor
HED	human equivalent dose	UF _S	subchronic-to-chronic uncertainty factor
i.p.	intraperitoneal	UF _D	database deficiencies uncertainty factor
IRIS	Integrated Risk Information System	U.S.	United States
IVF	in vitro fertilization		
LC ₅₀	median lethal concentration		
LD ₅₀	median lethal dose		
LOAEL	lowest-observed-adverse-effect level		
MN	micronuclei		

1
2

AUTHORS | CONTRIBUTORS | REVIEWERS

Assessment Team

Janice S. Lee, Ph.D. (Chemical Manager) Keith Salazar, Ph.D.* (Co-Chemical Manager)	U.S. EPA Office of Research and Development National Center for Environmental Assessment Research Triangle Park, NC *Washington, DC
Chris Brinkerhoff, Ph.D.	Former ORISE Postdoctoral Fellow at U.S. EPA/ORD/NCEA Currently with U.S. EPA, Office of Chemical Safety and Pollution Prevention, Office of Pollution Prevention and Toxics Washington, DC

3

Contributors

Andrew Hotchkiss, Ph.D. Channa Keshava, Ph.D. Amanda Persad, Ph.D. Vincent Cogliano, Ph.D.* Jason Fritz, Ph.D.* Catherine Gibbons, Ph.D. * Samantha Jones, Ph.D. * Kathleen Newhouse, M.S.* Christine Cai, M.S.* Karen Hogan, M.S.* Paul Schlosser, Ph.D. Alan Sasso, Ph.D.*	U.S. EPA Office of Research and Development National Center for Environmental Assessment Research Triangle Park, NC *Washington, DC
---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

4

Production Team

Maureen Johnson Vicki Soto Dahnish Shams	U.S. EPA Office of Research and Development National Center for Environmental Assessment Washington, DC
------------------------------------------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

5

Contractor Support

Robyn Blain, Ph.D. Michelle Cawley, M.L.S., M.A.* William Mendez, Jr., Ph.D. Pam Ross, M.S.P.H. Cara Henning, Ph.D. * Tao Hong, Ph.D. Ami Gordon, M.P.H.	ICF Fairfax, VA *Research Triangle Park, NC
----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	---------------------------------------------------

1

Executive Direction

Kenneth Olden, Ph.D., Sc.D., L.H.D. (Center Director – Retired) U.S. EPA/ORD/NCEA
Michael Slimak, Ph.D. (Acting Center Director) Washington, DC
John Vandenberg, Ph.D.# (National Program Director, Human *Cincinnati, OH
Health Risk Assessment) # Research Triangle Park, NC
Lynn Flowers, Ph.D., DABT (Associate Director for Health,
currently with the Office of Science Policy)
Vincent Cogliano, Ph.D. (IRIS Program Director)
Gina Perovich, M.S. (IRIS Program Deputy Director)
Samantha Jones, Ph.D. (IRIS Associate Director for Science)
Weihsueh A. Chiu, Ph.D. (Branch Chief, Toxicity Pathways
Branch) formerly with the U.S. EPA
Andrew Hotchkiss, Ph.D.# (Acting Branch Chief, Toxicity
Pathways Branch)
Jason Lambert, Ph.D., DABT* (Acting Branch Chief, Biological
Risk Assessment Branch)
Ted Berner, M.S. (Assistant Center Director)
Karen Hogan, M.S. (former Acting Branch Chief, Toxicity
Effects Branch)

2

Internal Review Team

General Toxicology Workgroup	U.S. EPA
Inhalation Workgroup	Office of Research and Development
Neurotoxicity Workgroup	National Center for Environmental Assessment
Pharmacokinetics Workgroup	Washington, DC
Reproductive and Developmental Toxicology Workgroup	Research Triangle Park, NC
Statistical Workgroup	Cincinnati, OH
Toxicity Pathways Workgroup	
Executive Review Committee	

3

Reviewers

4 This assessment was provided for review to scientists in EPA's Program and Region Offices.
5 Comments were submitted by:

6 Office of the Administrator/Office of Children's Health Protection
7 Office of Land and Emergency Management
8 Region 2, New York, NY
9 Region 8, Denver, CO

10 This assessment was provided for review to other federal agencies and the Executive Office of the
11 President. Comments were submitted by:

12 Department of Health and Human Services/Agency for Toxic Substances and Disease Registry,
13 Department of Health and Human Services/National Institute of Environmental Health
14 Sciences/National Toxicology Program,
15 Executive Office of the President/Office of Management and Budget,
16 Executive Office of the President/Office of Science and Technology Policy

PREFACE

This Toxicological Review critically reviews the publicly available studies on *tert*-butyl alcohol (*tert*-butanol) to identify its adverse health effects and to characterize exposure-response relationships. The assessment examined all effects by oral and inhalation routes of exposure and includes an oral noncancer reference dose (RfD), an inhalation noncancer reference concentration (RfC), a cancer weight of evidence descriptor, and a cancer dose-response assessment. It was prepared under the auspices of the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency's (EPA's) Integrated Risk Information System (IRIS) program. This is the first IRIS assessment for this chemical.

Toxicological Reviews for *tert*-butanol and ethyl *tert*-butyl ether (ETBE) were developed simultaneously because they have several overlapping scientific aspects.

- *tert*-Butanol is one of the primary metabolites of ETBE, and some of the toxicological effects of ETBE are attributed to *tert*-butanol. Therefore, data on ETBE are considered informative for the hazard identification and dose-response assessment of *tert*-butanol, and vice versa.
- The scientific literature for the two chemicals includes data on α_{2u} -globulin-related nephropathy; therefore, a common approach was employed to evaluate these data as they relate to the mode of action for kidney effects.
- A combined physiologically based pharmacokinetic (PBPK) model for *tert*-butanol and ETBE in rats was applied to support the dose-response assessments for these chemicals.

A public meeting was held in December 2013 to obtain input on preliminary materials for *tert*-butanol, including draft literature searches and associated search strategies, evidence tables, and exposure-response arrays prior to the development of the IRIS assessment. All public comments provided were taken into consideration in developing the draft assessment.

A public science meeting was held on June 30, 2016 to provide the public an opportunity to engage in early discussions on the draft IRIS toxicological review and the draft charge to the peer review panel prior to release for external peer review. The complete set of public comments, including the slides presented at the June 2016 public science meeting, is available on the docket at <http://www.regulations.gov> (Docket ID No. [EPA-HQ-ORD-2013-1111](http://www.regulations.gov)).

Organ/system-specific reference values are calculated based on kidney and thyroid toxicity data. These reference values could be useful for cumulative risk assessments that consider the combined effect of multiple agents acting on the same biological system.

This assessment was conducted in accordance with EPA guidance, which is cited and summarized in the Preamble to IRIS Toxicological Reviews. The findings of this assessment and related documents produced during its development are available on the IRIS website (<http://www.epa.gov/iris>). Appendices for toxicokinetic information, PBPK modeling, genotoxicity

1 study summaries, dose-response modeling, and other information are provided as Supplemental
2 Information to this Toxicological Review. For additional information about this assessment or for
3 general questions regarding IRIS, please contact EPA's IRIS Hotline at 202-566-1676 (phone), 202-
4 566-1749 (fax), or hotline.iris@epa.gov.

5 **Uses**

6 *tert*-Butanol primarily is an anthropogenic substance that is produced in large quantities
7 ([HSDB, 2007](#)) from several precursors, including 1-butene, isobutylene, acetyl chloride and
8 dimethylzinc, and *tert*-butyl hydroperoxide. The domestic production volume of *tert*-butanol,
9 including imports, was approximately 4 billion pounds in 2012 ([U.S. EPA, 2014](#)).

10 *tert*-Butanol has been used as a fuel oxygenate, an octane booster in unleaded gasoline, and
11 a denaturant for ethanol. From 1997 to 2005, the annual *tert*-butanol volume found in gasoline
12 ranged from approximately 4 million to 6 million gallons. During that time, larger quantities were
13 used to make methyl *tert*-butyl ether (MTBE) and ETBE. MTBE and ETBE are fuel oxygenates that
14 were used in the United States prior to 2007 at levels of more than 2 billion gallons annually.
15 Current use levels of MTBE and ETBE in the United States are much lower, but use in Europe and
16 Asia remains strong.¹ Some states have banned MTBE in gasoline due to groundwater
17 contamination from gasoline leaks and spills.

18 *tert*-Butanol has been used for a variety of other purposes, including as a dehydrating agent
19 and solvent. As such, it is added to lacquers, paint removers, and nail enamels and polishes.
20 *tert*-Butanol also is used to manufacture methyl methacrylate plastics and flotation devices.
21 Cosmetic and food-related uses include the manufacture of flavors, and, because of its camphor-like
22 aroma, it also is used to create artificial musk, fruit essences, and perfume ([HSDB, 2007](#)). It is used
23 in coatings on metal and paperboard food containers ([Cal/EPA, 1999](#)) and industrial cleaning
24 compounds and can be used for chemical extraction in pharmaceutical applications ([HSDB, 2007](#)).

25 **Fate and Transport**

26 ***Soil***

27 *tert*-Butanol is expected to be highly mobile in soil due to its low affinity for soil organic
28 matter. Rainwater or other water percolating through soil is expected to dissolve and transport
29 most *tert*-butanol present in soil, potentially leading to groundwater contamination. Based on its
30 vapor pressure, *tert*-butanol's volatilization from soil surfaces is expected to be an important
31 dissipation process ([HSDB, 2007](#)). As a tertiary alcohol, *tert*-butanol is expected to degrade more
32 slowly in the environment compared to primary (e.g., ethanol) or secondary (e.g., isopropanol)
33 alcohols. In anoxic soil conditions, the half-life of *tert*-butanol is estimated to be months

¹<http://www.ihs.com/products/chemical/planning/ceh/gasoline-octane-improvers.aspx>.

1 (approximately 200 days). Microbial degradation rates are increased in soils supplemented with
2 nitrate and sulfate nutrients ([HSDB, 2007](#)).

3 **Water**

4 *tert*-Butanol is expected to volatilize from water surfaces within 2 to 29 days and does not
5 readily adsorb to suspended solids and sediments in water ([HSDB, 2007](#)). Biodegradation in
6 aerobic water occurs over weeks to months and in anaerobic aquatic conditions, the biodegradation
7 rate decreases. Bioconcentration of *tert*-butanol in aquatic organisms is low ([HSDB, 2007](#)).

8 **Air**

9 *tert*-Butanol primarily exists as a vapor in the ambient atmosphere. Vapor-phase *tert*-
10 butanol is degraded in the atmosphere by reacting with photochemically produced hydroxyl
11 radicals with a half-life of 14 days ([HSDB, 2007](#)).

12 **Occurrence in the Environment**

13 The Toxics Release Inventory (TRI) Program National Analysis Report estimated that more
14 than 1 million pounds of *tert*-butanol has been released into the soil from landfills, land treatment,
15 underground injection, surface impoundments, and other land disposal sources. In 2014, the TRI
16 program also reported 1,845,773 pounds of *tert*-butanol released into the air, discharged to bodies
17 of water, disposed at the facility to land, and disposed in underground injection wells ([U.S. EPA,](#)
18 [2016](#)). Total off-site disposal or other releases of *tert*-butanol amounted to 67,060 pounds ([U.S.](#)
19 [EPA, 2016](#)). In California, air emissions of *tert*-butanol from stationary sources are estimated to be
20 at least 27,000 pounds per year, based on data reported by the state's Air Toxics Program
21 ([Scorecard, 2014](#)).

22 *tert*-Butanol has been identified in drinking water wells throughout the United States
23 ([HSDB, 2007](#)). California's Geotracker Database² lists 3,496 detections of *tert*-butanol in
24 groundwater associated with contaminated sites in that state since 2011. *tert*-Butanol also has been
25 detected in drinking water wells in the vicinity of landfills ([U.S. EPA, 2012c](#)). Additionally, *tert*-
26 Butanol leaking from underground storage tanks could be a product of MTBE and ETBE, which can
27 degrade to form *tert*-butanol in soils ([HSDB, 2007](#)). The industrial chemical *tert*-butyl acetate also
28 can degrade to form *tert*-butanol in animals post exposure and in the environment.

29 Ambient outdoor air concentrations of *tert*-butanol vary according to proximity to urban
30 areas ([HSDB, 2007](#)).

²<http://geotracker.waterboards.ca.gov/>.

1 **General Population Exposure**

2 *tert*-Butanol exposure can occur in many different settings. Releases from underground
3 storage tanks could result in exposure for people who get their drinking water from wells. Due to
4 its high environmental mobility and resistance to biodegradation, *tert*-butanol has the potential to
5 contaminate and persist in groundwater and soil ([HSDB, 2007](#)).

6 Ingestion of contaminated food can be a source of *tert*-butanol exposure through its use as a
7 coating in metallic and paperboard food containers ([Cal/EPA, 1999](#)), and *tert*-butanol has been
8 detected in food ([HSDB, 2007](#)). Internal exposure to *tert*-butanol also can occur as a result of
9 ingestion of MTBE or ETBE, as *tert*-butanol is a metabolite of these compounds ([NSF International,](#)
10 [2003](#)).

11 Other human exposure pathways include inhalation, lactation, and, to a lesser extent,
12 dermal contact. Inhalation exposure can occur due to the chemical's volatility and release from
13 industrial processes, consumer products, and contaminated sites ([HSDB, 2007](#)). *tert*-Butanol has
14 been identified in mother's milk ([HSDB, 2007](#)). Dermal contact is a viable route of exposure through
15 handling consumer products containing *tert*-butanol ([NSF International, 2003](#)).

16 **Assessments by Other National and International Health Agencies**

17 Toxicity information on *tert*-butanol has been evaluated by the National Institute for
18 Occupational Safety and Health ([NIOSH, 2007](#)), the Occupational Safety and Health Administration
19 ([OSHA, 2006](#)), and the Food and Drug Administration ([FDA, 2015, 2011](#)). The results of these
20 assessments are presented in Appendix A of the Supplemental Information to this Toxicological
21 Review. Of importance to recognize is that these earlier assessments could have been prepared for
22 different purposes and might use different methods. In addition, newer studies have been included
23 in the IRIS assessment.

PREAMBLE TO IRIS TOXICOLOGICAL REVIEWS

Note: The Preamble summarizes the objectives and scope of the IRIS program, general principles and systematic review procedures used in developing IRIS assessments, and the overall development process and document structure.

1. Objectives and Scope of the IRIS Program

Soon after EPA was established in 1970, it was at the forefront of developing risk assessment as a science and applying it in support of actions to protect human health and the environment. EPA's IRIS program³ contributes to this endeavor by reviewing epidemiologic and experimental studies of chemicals in the environment to identify adverse health effects and characterize exposure–response relationships. Health agencies worldwide use IRIS assessments, which are also a scientific resource for researchers and the public.

IRIS assessments cover the hazard identification and dose–response steps of risk assessment. Exposure assessment and risk characterization are outside the scope of IRIS assessments, as are political, economic, and technical aspects of risk management. An IRIS assessment may cover one chemical, a group of structurally or toxicologically related chemicals, or a chemical mixture. Exceptions outside the scope of the IRIS program are radionuclides, chemicals used only as pesticides, and the “criteria air pollutants” (particulate matter, ground-level

ozone, carbon monoxide, sulfur oxides, nitrogen oxides, and lead).

Enhancements to the IRIS program are improving its science, transparency, and productivity. To improve the science, the IRIS program is adapting and implementing principles of systematic review (i.e., using explicit methods to identify, evaluate, and synthesize study findings). To increase transparency, the IRIS program discusses key science issues with the scientific community and the public as it begins an assessment. External peer review, independently managed and in public, improves both science and transparency. Increased productivity requires that assessments be concise, focused on EPA's needs, and completed without undue delay.

IRIS assessments follow EPA guidance⁴ and standardized practices of systematic review. This Preamble summarizes and does not change IRIS operating procedures or EPA guidance.

Periodically, the IRIS program asks for nomination of agents for future assessment or reassessment. Selection depends on EPA's priorities, relevance to public health, and availability of pertinent studies. The IRIS multiyear agenda⁵ lists upcoming assessments. The IRIS program may also assess other agents in anticipation of public health needs.

³ IRIS program website: <http://www.epa.gov/iris/>

⁴ EPA guidance documents: <http://www.epa.gov/iris/basic-information-about-integrated-risk-information-system#guidance/>

⁵ IRIS multiyear agenda: <https://www.epa.gov/iris/iris-agenda>

2. Planning an Assessment: Scoping, Problem Formulation, and Protocols

Early attention to planning ensures that IRIS assessments meet their objectives and properly frame science issues.

Scoping refers to the first step of planning, where the IRIS program consults with EPA's program and regional offices to ascertain their needs. Scoping specifies the agents an assessment will address, routes and durations of exposure, susceptible populations and lifestages, and other topics of interest.

Problem formulation refers to the science issues an assessment will address and includes input from the scientific community and the public. A preliminary literature survey, beginning with secondary sources (e.g., assessments by national and international health agencies and comprehensive review articles), identifies potential health outcomes and science issues. It also identifies related chemicals (e.g., toxicologically active metabolites and compounds that metabolize to the chemical of interest).

Each IRIS assessment comprises multiple systematic reviews for multiple health outcomes. It also evaluates hypothesized mechanistic pathways and characterizes exposure-response relationships. An assessment may focus on important health outcomes and analyses rather than expand beyond what is necessary to meet its objectives.

Protocols refer to the systematic review procedures planned for use in an assessment. They include strategies for literature searches, criteria for study inclusion or exclusion, considerations for evaluating study methods and quality, and approaches

to extracting data. Protocols may evolve as an assessment progresses and new agent-specific insights and issues emerge.

3. Identifying and Selecting Pertinent Studies

IRIS assessments conduct systematic literature searches with criteria for inclusion and exclusion. The objective is to retrieve the pertinent primary studies (i.e., studies with original data on health outcomes or their mechanisms). *PECO statements* (Populations, Exposures, Comparisons, Outcomes) govern the literature searches and screening criteria. "Populations" and animal species generally have no restrictions. "Exposures" refers to the agent and related chemicals identified during scoping and problem formulation and may consider route, duration, or timing of exposure. "Comparisons" means studies that allow comparison of effects across different levels of exposure. "Outcomes" may become more specific (e.g., from "toxicity" to "developmental toxicity" to "hypospadias") as an assessment progresses.

For studies of absorption, distribution, metabolism, and elimination, the first objective is to create an inventory of pertinent studies. Subsequent sorting and analysis facilitates characterization and quantification of these processes.

Studies on mechanistic events can be numerous and diverse. Here, too, the objective is to create an inventory of studies for later sorting to support analyses of related data. The inventory also facilitates generation and evaluation of hypothesized mechanistic pathways.

The IRIS program posts initial protocols for literature searches on its website and adds search results to EPA's HERO database.⁶ Then the IRIS program takes extra steps to

⁶ Health and Environmental Research Online: <https://hero.epa.gov/hero/>

1 ensure identification of pertinent studies: by
2 encouraging the scientific community and the
3 public to identify additional studies and
4 ongoing research; by searching for data
5 submitted under the Toxic Substances
6 Control Act or the Federal Insecticide,
7 Fungicide, and Rodenticide Act; and by
8 considering late-breaking studies that would
9 impact the credibility of the conclusions, even
10 during the review process.⁷

11 4. Evaluating Study Methods and 12 Quality

13 IRIS assessments evaluate study methods
14 and quality, using uniform approaches for
15 each group of similar studies. The objective is
16 that subsequent syntheses can weigh study
17 results on their merits. Key concerns are
18 potential *bias* (factors that affect the
19 magnitude or direction of an effect) and
20 *insensitivity* (factors that limit the ability of a
21 study to detect a true effect).

22 For human and animal studies, the
23 evaluation of study methods and quality
24 considers study design, exposure measures,
25 outcome measures, data analysis, selective
26 reporting, and study sensitivity. For human
27 studies, this evaluation also considers
28 selection of participant and referent groups
29 and potential confounding. Emphasis is on
30 discerning bias that could substantively
31 change an effect estimate, considering also
32 the expected direction of the bias. Low
33 sensitivity is a bias towards the null.

34 Study-evaluation considerations are
35 specific to each study design, health effect,
36 and agent. Subject-matter experts evaluate
37 each group of studies to identify
38 characteristics that bear on the
39 informativeness of the results. For
40 carcinogenicity, neurotoxicity, reproductive
41 toxicity, and developmental toxicity, there is
42 EPA guidance for study evaluation ([U.S. EPA,
43 2005a, 1998, 1996, 1991](#)). As subject-matter

44 experts examine a group of studies,
45 additional agent-specific knowledge or
46 methodologic concerns may emerge and a
47 second pass become necessary.

48 Assessments use evidence tables to
49 summarize the design and results of
50 pertinent studies. If tables become too
51 numerous or unwieldy, they may focus on
52 effects that are more important or studies
53 that are more informative.

54 The IRIS program posts initial protocols
55 for study evaluation on its website, then
56 considers public input as it completes this
57 step.

58 5. Integrating the Evidence of 59 Causation for Each Health 60 Outcome

61 **Synthesis within lines of evidence.** For
62 each health outcome, IRIS assessments
63 synthesize the human evidence and the
64 animal evidence, augmenting each with
65 informative subsets of mechanistic data. Each
66 synthesis considers aspects of an association
67 that may suggest causation: consistency,
68 exposure–response relationship, strength of
69 association, temporal relationship, biological
70 plausibility, coherence, and “natural
71 experiments” in humans ([U.S. EPA, 1994,
72 §2.1.3](#)) ([U.S. EPA, 2005a](#), §2.5).

73 Each synthesis seeks to reconcile
74 ostensible inconsistencies between studies,
75 taking into account differences in study
76 methods and quality. This leads to a
77 distinction between *conflicting evidence*
78 (unexplained positive and negative results in
79 similarly exposed human populations or in
80 similar animal models) and *differing results*
81 (mixed results attributable to differences
82 between human populations, animal models,
83 or exposure conditions) ([U.S. EPA, 2005a,
84 §2.5](#)).

⁷ IRIS “stopping rules”: https://www.epa.gov/sites/production/files/2014-06/documents/iris_stoppingrules.pdf

1 Each synthesis of human evidence
2 explores alternative explanations (e.g.,
3 chance, bias, or confounding) and determines
4 whether they may satisfactorily explain the
5 results. Each synthesis of animal evidence
6 explores the potential for analogous results in
7 humans. Coherent results across multiple
8 species increase confidence that the animal
9 results are relevant to humans.

10 Mechanistic data are useful to augment
11 the human or animal evidence with
12 information on precursor events, to evaluate
13 the human relevance of animal results, or to
14 identify susceptible populations and
15 lifestages. An agent may operate through
16 multiple mechanistic pathways, even if one
17 hypothesis dominates the literature ([U.S.](#)
18 [EPA, 2005a](#), §2.4.3.3).

19 **Integration across lines of evidence.**

20 For each health outcome, IRIS assessments
21 integrate the human, animal, and mechanistic
22 evidence to answer the question: *What is the*
23 *nature of the association between exposure to*
24 *the agent and the health outcome?*

25 For cancer, EPA includes a standardized
26 hazard descriptor in characterizing the
27 strength of the evidence of causation. The
28 objective is to promote clarity and
29 consistency of conclusions across
30 assessments ([U.S. EPA, 2005a](#), §2.5).

31 *Carcinogenic to humans:* convincing
32 epidemiologic evidence of a causal
33 association; or strong human evidence of
34 cancer or its key precursors, extensive
35 animal evidence, identification of mode-
36 of-action and its key precursors in
37 animals, and strong evidence that they
38 are anticipated in humans.

39 *Likely to be carcinogenic to humans:* evidence
40 that demonstrates a potential hazard to
41 humans. Examples include a plausible
42 association in humans with supporting
43 experimental evidence, multiple positive
44 results in animals, a rare animal
45 response, or a positive study
46 strengthened by other lines of evidence.

47 *Suggestive evidence of carcinogenic potential:*
48 evidence that raises a concern for

49 humans. Examples include a positive
50 result in the only study, or a single
51 positive result in an extensive database.

52 *Inadequate information to assess carcinogenic*
53 *potential:* no other descriptors apply.
54 Examples include little or no pertinent
55 information, *conflicting evidence*, or
56 negative results not sufficiently robust
57 for *not likely*.

58 *Not likely to be carcinogenic to humans:*
59 robust evidence to conclude that there is
60 no basis for concern. Examples include no
61 effects in well-conducted studies in both
62 sexes of multiple animal species,
63 extensive evidence showing that effects
64 in animals arise through modes-of-action
65 that do not operate in humans, or
66 convincing evidence that effects are not
67 likely by a particular exposure route or
68 below a defined dose.

69 If there is credible evidence of
70 carcinogenicity, there is an evaluation of
71 mutagenicity, because this influences the
72 approach to dose–response assessment and
73 subsequent application of adjustment factors
74 for exposures early in life ([U.S. EPA, 2005a](#),
75 §3.3.1, §3.5), ([U.S. EPA, 2005b](#), §5).

76 **6. Selecting Studies for Derivation**
77 **of Toxicity Values**

78 The purpose of toxicity values (slope
79 factors, unit risks, reference doses, reference
80 concentrations; see section 7) is to estimate
81 exposure levels likely to be without
82 appreciable risk of adverse health effects.
83 EPA uses these values to support its actions
84 to protect human health.

85 The health outcomes considered for
86 derivation of toxicity values may depend on
87 the hazard descriptors. For example, IRIS
88 assessments generally derive cancer values
89 for agents that are *carcinogenic* or *likely to be*
90 *carcinogenic*, and sometimes for agents with
91 *suggestive evidence* ([U.S. EPA, 2005a](#), §3).

92 Derivation of toxicity values begins with a
93 new evaluation of studies, as some studies
94 used qualitatively for hazard identification

1 may not be useful quantitatively for
2 exposure–response assessment. Quantitative
3 analyses require quantitative measures of
4 exposure and response. An assessment
5 weighs the merits of the human and animal
6 studies, of various animal models, and of
7 different routes and durations of exposure
8 ([U.S. EPA, 1994](#), §2.1). Study selection is not
9 reducible to a formula, and each assessment
10 explains its approach.

11 Other biological determinants of study
12 quality include appropriate measures of
13 exposure and response, investigation of early
14 effects that precede overt toxicity, and
15 appropriate reporting of related effects (e.g.,
16 combining effects that comprise a syndrome,
17 or benign and malignant tumors in a specific
18 tissue).

19 Statistical determinants of study quality
20 include multiple levels of exposure (to
21 characterize the shape of the exposure–
22 response curve) and adequate exposure
23 range and sample sizes (to minimize
24 extrapolation and maximize precision) ([U.S.
25 EPA, 2012](#), §2.1).

26 Studies of low sensitivity may be less
27 useful if they fail to detect a true effect or
28 yield toxicity values with wide confidence
29 limits.

30 7. Deriving Toxicity Values

31 **General** approach. EPA guidance
32 describes a two-step approach to dose–
33 response assessment: analysis in the range of
34 observation, then extrapolation to lower
35 levels. Each toxicity value pertains to a route
36 (e.g., oral, inhalation, dermal) and duration or
37 timing of exposure (e.g., chronic, subchronic,
38 gestational) ([U.S. EPA, 2002](#), §4).

39 IRIS assessments derive a candidate
40 value from each suitable data set.
41 Consideration of candidate values yields a
42 toxicity value for each organ or system.
43 Consideration of the organ/system-specific
44 values results in the selection of an overall

45 toxicity value to cover all health outcomes.
46 The organ/system-specific values are useful
47 for subsequent cumulative risk assessments
48 that consider the combined effect of multiple
49 agents acting at a common anatomical site.

50 **Analysis in the range of observation.**
51 Within the observed range, the preferred
52 approach is modeling to incorporate a wide
53 range of data. Toxicokinetic modeling has
54 become increasingly common for its ability to
55 support target-dose estimation, cross-species
56 adjustment, or exposure-route conversion. If
57 data are too limited to support toxicokinetic
58 modeling, there are standardized approaches
59 to estimate daily exposures and scale them
60 from animals to humans ([U.S. EPA, 1994](#), §3),
61 ([U.S. EPA, 2005a](#), §3.1), ([U.S. EPA, 2011](#),
62 [2006](#)).

63 For human studies, an assessment may
64 develop exposure–response models that
65 reflect the structure of the available data ([U.S.
66 EPA, 2005a](#), §3.2.1). For animal studies, EPA
67 has developed a set of empirical (“curve-
68 fitting”) models⁸ that can fit typical data sets
69 ([U.S. EPA, 2005a](#), §3.2.2). Such modeling
70 yields a *point of departure*, defined as a dose
71 near the lower end of the observed range,
72 without significant extrapolation to lower
73 levels (e.g., the estimated dose associated
74 with an extra risk of 10% for animal data or
75 1% for human data, or their 95% lower
76 confidence limits)([U.S. EPA, 2005a](#), §3.2.4),
77 ([U.S. EPA, 2012](#), §2.2.1).

78 When justified by the scope of the
79 assessment, toxicodynamic (“biologically
80 based”) modeling is possible if data are
81 sufficient to ascertain the key events of a
82 mode-of-action and to estimate their
83 parameters. Analysis of model uncertainty
84 can determine the range of lower doses
85 where data support further use of the model
86 ([U.S. EPA, 2005a](#), §3.2.2, §3.3.2).

87 For a group of agents that act at a
88 common site or through common
89 mechanisms, an assessment may derive
90 relative potency factors based on relative

⁸ Benchmark Dose Software:
<http://www.epa.gov/bmds/>

1 toxicity, rates of absorption or metabolism,
2 quantitative structure–activity relationships,
3 or receptor-binding characteristics ([U.S. EPA,](#)
4 [2005a](#), §3.2.6).

5 **Extrapolation: slope factors and unit**
6 **risks.** An *oral slope factor* or an *inhalation*
7 *unit risk* facilitates subsequent estimation of
8 human cancer risks. Extrapolation proceeds
9 linearly (i.e., risk proportional to dose) from
10 the point of departure to the levels of interest.
11 This is appropriate for agents with direct
12 mutagenic activity. It is also the default if
13 there is no established mode-of-action ([U.S.](#)
14 [EPA, 2005a](#), §3.3.1, §3.3.3).

15 Differences in susceptibility may warrant
16 derivation of multiple slope factors or unit
17 risks. For early-life exposure to carcinogens
18 with a mutagenic mode-of-action, EPA has
19 developed default *age-dependent adjustment*
20 *factors* for agents without chemical-specific
21 susceptibility data ([U.S. EPA, 2005a](#), §3.5),
22 ([U.S. EPA, 2005b](#), §5).

23 If data are sufficient to ascertain the
24 mode-of-action and to conclude that it is not
25 linear at low levels, extrapolation may use the
26 reference-value approach ([U.S. EPA, 2005a](#),
27 §3.3.4).

28 **Extrapolation: reference values.** An
29 *oral reference dose* or an *inhalation reference*
30 *concentration* is an estimate of human
31 exposure (including in susceptible
32 populations) likely to be without appreciable
33 risk of adverse health effects over a lifetime
34 ([U.S. EPA, 2002](#), §4.2). Reference values
35 generally cover effects other than cancer.
36 They are also appropriate for carcinogens
37 with a nonlinear mode-of-action.

38 Calculation of reference values involves
39 dividing the point of departure by a set of
40 *uncertainty factors* (each typically 1, 3, or 10,
41 unless there are adequate chemical-specific
42 data) to account for different sources of
43 uncertainty and variability ([U.S. EPA, 2002](#),
44 §4.4.5), ([U.S. EPA, 2014](#)).

45 **Human variation:** An uncertainty factor
46 covers susceptible populations and
47 lifestages that may respond at lower
48 levels, unless the data originate from a
49 susceptible study population.

50 *Animal-to-human extrapolation:* For
51 reference values based on animal results,
52 an uncertainty factor reflects cross-
53 species differences, which may cause
54 humans to respond at lower levels.

55 *Subchronic-to-chronic exposure:* For chronic
56 reference values based on subchronic
57 studies, an uncertainty factor reflects the
58 likelihood that a lower level over a longer
59 duration may induce a similar response.
60 This factor may not be necessary for
61 reference values of shorter duration.

62 *Adverse-effect level to no-observed-adverse-*
63 *effect level:* For reference values based on
64 a lowest-observed-adverse-effect level,
65 an uncertainty factor reflects a level
66 judged to have no observable adverse
67 effects.

68 *Database deficiencies:* If there is concern that
69 future studies may identify a more
70 sensitive effect, target organ, population,
71 or lifestage, a *database uncertainty factor*
72 reflects the nature of the database
73 deficiency.

74 **8. Process for Developing and Peer-**

75 **Reviewing IRIS Assessments**

76 The IRIS process (revised in 2009 and
77 enhanced in 2013) involves extensive public
78 engagement and multiple levels of scientific
79 review and comment. IRIS program scientists
80 consider all comments. Materials released,
81 comments received from outside EPA, and
82 disposition of major comments (steps 3, 4,
83 and 6 below) become part of the public
84 record.

85 **Step 1: Draft development.** As outlined in
86 section 2 of this Preamble, IRIS program
87 scientists specify the scope of an
88 assessment and formulate science issues
89 for discussion with the scientific
90 community and the public. Next, they
91 release initial protocols for the
92 systematic review procedures planned
93 for use in the assessment. IRIS program
94 scientists then develop a first draft, using
95 structured approaches to identify

1 pertinent studies, evaluate study
2 methods and quality, integrate the
3 evidence of causation for each health
4 outcome, select studies for derivation of
5 toxicity values, and derive toxicity values,
6 as outlined in Preamble sections 3–7.

7 **Step 2: Agency review.** Health scientists
8 across EPA review the draft assessment.

9 **Step 3: Interagency science consultation.**
10 Other federal agencies and the Executive
11 Office of the President review the draft
12 assessment.

13 **Step 4: Public comment, followed by**
14 **external peer review.** The public
15 reviews the draft assessment. IRIS
16 program scientists release a revised draft
17 for independent external peer review.
18 The peer reviewers consider whether the
19 draft assessment assembled and
20 evaluated the evidence according to EPA
21 guidance and whether the evidence
22 justifies the conclusions.

23 **Step 5: Revise assessment.** IRIS program
24 scientists revise the assessment to
25 address the comments from the peer
26 review.

27 **Step 6: Final agency review and**
28 **interagency science discussion.** The
29 IRIS program discusses the revised
30 assessment with EPA's program and
31 regional offices and with other federal
32 agencies and the Executive Office of the
33 President.

34 **Step 7: Post final assessment.** The IRIS
35 program posts the completed assessment
36 and a summary on its website.

37 **9. General Structure of IRIS** 38 **Assessments**

39 **Main text.** IRIS assessments generally
40 comprise two major sections: (1) Hazard
41 Identification and (2) Dose–Response
42 Assessment. Section 1.1 briefly reviews
43 chemical properties and toxicokinetics to
44 describe the disposition of the agent in the
45 body. This section identifies related

46 chemicals and summarizes their health
47 outcomes, citing authoritative reviews. If an
48 assessment covers a chemical mixture, this
49 section discusses environmental processes
50 that alter the mixtures humans encounter
51 and compares them to mixtures studied
52 experimentally.

53 Section 1.2 includes a subsection for each
54 major health outcome. Each subsection
55 discusses the respective literature searches
56 and study considerations, as outlined in
57 Preamble sections 3 and 4, unless covered in
58 the front matter. Each subsection concludes
59 with evidence synthesis and integration, as
60 outlined in Preamble section 5.

61 Section 1.3 links health hazard
62 information to dose–response analyses for
63 each health outcome. One subsection
64 identifies susceptible populations and
65 lifestages, as observed in human or animal
66 studies or inferred from mechanistic data.
67 These may warrant further analysis to
68 quantify differences in susceptibility.
69 Another subsection identifies biological
70 considerations for selecting health outcomes,
71 studies, or data sets, as outlined in Preamble
72 section 6.

73 Section 2 includes a subsection for each
74 toxicity value. Each subsection discusses
75 study selection, methods of analysis, and
76 derivation of a toxicity value, as outlined in
77 Preamble sections 6 and 7.

78 **Front matter.** The Executive Summary
79 provides information historically included in
80 IRIS summaries on the IRIS program website.
81 Its structure reflects the needs and
82 expectations of EPA's program and regional
83 offices.

84 A section on systematic review methods
85 summarizes key elements of the protocols,
86 including methods to identify and evaluate
87 pertinent studies. The final protocols appear
88 as an appendix.

89 The Preface specifies the scope of an
90 assessment and its relation to prior
91 assessments. It discusses issues that arose
92 during assessment development and
93 emerging areas of concern.

94 This Preamble summarizes general
95 procedures for assessments begun after the

1 date below. The Preface identifies
2 assessment-specific approaches that differ
3 from these general procedures.

4
5 August 2016
6

7 **10. Preamble References**

8 [U.S. EPA](#). (1991). Guidelines for
9 developmental toxicity risk assessment (pp.
10 1-83). (EPA/600/FR-91/001). Washington,
11 DC: U.S. Environmental Protection Agency,
12 Risk Assessment Forum.
13 <http://cfpub.epa.gov/ncea/cfm/recordisplay.cfm?deid=23162>
14
15 [U.S. EPA](#). (1994). Methods for derivation of
16 inhalation reference concentrations and
17 application of inhalation dosimetry [EPA
18 Report] (pp. 1-409). (EPA/600/8-90/066F).
19 Research Triangle Park, NC: U.S.
20 Environmental Protection Agency, Office of
21 Research and Development, Office of Health
22 and Environmental Assessment,
23 Environmental Criteria and Assessment
24 Office.
25 <https://cfpub.epa.gov/ncea/risk/recordisplay.cfm?deid=71993&CFID=51174829&CFTOKEN=25006317>
26
27 [U.S. EPA](#). (1996). Guidelines for reproductive
28 toxicity risk assessment (pp. 1-143).
29 (EPA/630/R-96/009). Washington, DC: U.S.
30 Environmental Protection Agency, Risk
31 Assessment Forum.
32
33 [U.S. EPA](#). (1998). Guidelines for neurotoxicity
34 risk assessment. Fed Reg 63: 26926-26954.
35 [U.S. EPA](#). (2002). A review of the reference
36 dose and reference concentration processes
37 (pp. 1-192). (EPA/630/P-02/002F).
38 Washington, DC: U.S. Environmental
39 Protection Agency, Risk Assessment Forum.
40 <http://www.epa.gov/osa/review-reference-dose-and-reference-concentration-processes>
41
42 [U.S. EPA](#). (2005a). Guidelines for carcinogen
43 risk assessment [EPA Report] (pp. 1-166).
44 (EPA/630/P-03/001F). Washington, DC: U.S.
45 Environmental Protection Agency, Risk
46 Assessment Forum.
47 <http://www2.epa.gov/osa/guidelines-carcinogen-risk-assessment>
48

49 [U.S. EPA](#). (2005b). Supplemental guidance for
50 assessing susceptibility from early-life
51 exposure to carcinogens (pp. 1-125).
52 (EPA/630/R-03/003F). Washington, DC: U.S.
53 Environmental Protection Agency, Risk
54 Assessment Forum.
55 [U.S. EPA](#). (2006). Approaches for the
56 application of physiologically based
57 pharmacokinetic (PBPK) models and
58 supporting data in risk assessment (Final
59 Report) [EPA Report] (pp. 1-123).
60 (EPA/600/R-05/043F). Washington, DC: U.S.
61 Environmental Protection Agency, Office of
62 Research and Development, National Center
63 for Environmental Assessment.
64 <http://cfpub.epa.gov/ncea/cfm/recordisplay.cfm?deid=157668>
65
66 [U.S. EPA](#). (2011). Recommended use of body
67 weight 3/4 as the default method in
68 derivation of the oral reference dose (pp. 1-
69 50). (EPA/100/R11/0001). Washington, DC:
70 U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Risk
71 Assessment Forum, Office of the Science
72 Advisor.
73 <https://www.epa.gov/risk/recommended-use-body-weight-34-default-method-derivation-oral-reference-dose>
74
75 [U.S. EPA](#). (2012). Benchmark dose technical
76 guidance (pp. 1-99). (EPA/100/R-12/001).
77 Washington, DC: U.S. Environmental
78 Protection Agency, Risk Assessment Forum.
79
80 [U.S. EPA](#). (2014). Guidance for applying
81 quantitative data to develop data-derived
82 extrapolation factors for interspecies and
83 intraspecies extrapolation. (EPA/100/R-
84 14/002F). Washington, DC: Risk Assessment
85 Forum, Office of the Science Advisor.
86 <http://www.epa.gov/raf/DDEF/pdf/ddef-final.pdf>
87
88

EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

Summation of Occurrence and Health Effects

tert-Butanol does not occur naturally; it is produced by humans for multiple purposes, such as a solvent for paints, a denaturant for ethanol and several other alcohols, an agent for dehydrating, and in the manufacture of flotation agents, fruit essences, and perfumes. *tert*-Butanol also is a primary metabolite of methyl *tert*-butyl ether (MTBE) and ethyl *tert*-butyl ether (ETBE). Exposure to *tert*-butanol primarily occurs through breathing air containing *tert*-butanol vapors and consuming contaminated water or foods. Exposure can also occur through direct skin contact.

Animal studies demonstrate that chronic oral exposure to *tert*-butanol is associated with kidney and thyroid effects. No chronic inhalation exposure studies have been conducted. Evidence is suggestive of carcinogenic potential for *tert*-butanol, based on thyroid tumors in male and female mice and renal tumors in male rats.

Effects Other Than Cancer Observed Following Oral Exposure

Kidney effects are a potential human hazard of oral exposure to *tert*-butanol. Kidney toxicity was observed in males and females in two strains of rats. Kidney weights were increased in male and female rats after 13 weeks or 15 months of treatment. Histopathological examination in male and female rats showed increased incidence or severity of nephropathy after 13 weeks of oral exposure, increases in severity of nephropathy after 2 years of oral exposure, and increased transitional epithelial hyperplasia after 2 years of oral exposure. Additionally, increased suppurative inflammation was noted in females after 2 years of oral exposure. In one strain of mice, the only kidney effect observed was an increase in kidney weight (absolute or relative) in female mice after 13 weeks, but no treatment-related histopathological lesions were reported in the kidneys of male or female mice at 13 weeks or 2 years. A mode of action (MOA) analysis determined that *tert*-butanol exposure induces a male rat-specific α_{2u} -globulin-associated nephropathy. *tert*-Butanol, however, is a weak inducer of α_{2u} -globulin nephropathy, which is not the sole process contributing to renal tubule nephropathy. Chronic progressive nephropathy (CPN) might also be involved in some noncancer effects, but the data are complicated by α_{2u} -globulin nephropathy in males. Effects attributable to α_{2u} -globulin nephropathy were not considered for kidney hazard identification. Females are not affected by α_{2u} -globulin nephropathy, so changes in kidney weights in female rats, transitional epithelial hyperplasia in female rats, suppurative inflammation in female rats, and severity and incidence of nephropathy in female rats are considered to result from *tert*-butanol exposure and are appropriate for identifying a hazard to the kidney.

1 At this time, evidence of selective developmental toxicity and reproductive system toxicity
 2 following *tert*-butanol exposure is inadequate. Information also is inadequate to draw conclusions
 3 regarding neurodevelopmental toxicity, liver toxicity, and urinary bladder toxicity.

4 **Oral Reference Dose (RfD) for Effects Other Than Cancer**

5 Kidney toxicity, represented by increases in severity of nephropathy, was chosen as the
 6 basis for the overall oral reference dose (RfD) (see Table ES-1). The kidney effects observed in the
 7 chronic study by [NTP \(1995\)](#) were used to derive the RfD. The endpoint of increases in severity of
 8 nephropathy was selected as the critical effect because it was observed in female rats consistently,
 9 it is an indicator of kidney toxicity, and was induced in a dose-responsive manner. Dose-response
 10 data were not amenable to modeling; accordingly, the point of departure was derived from the
 11 lowest-observed-adverse-effect level (LOAEL) of 43 mg/kg-day ([U.S. EPA, 2011](#)).

12 The overall RfD was calculated by dividing the POD for increases in severity of nephropathy
 13 by a composite uncertainty factor (UF) of 100 to account for the extrapolation from animals to
 14 humans (3), derivation from a LOAEL (3), and for interindividual differences in human
 15 susceptibility (10).

16 **Table ES-1. Organ/system-specific RfDs and overall RfD for *tert*-butanol**

Hazard	Basis	Point of departure* (mg/kg-day)	UF	Chronic RfD (mg/kg-day)	Study exposure description	Confidence
Kidney	Increases in severity of nephropathy	43.2	100	4 × 10 ⁻¹	Chronic	Medium
Overall RfD	Kidney	43.2	100	4 × 10⁻¹	Chronic	Medium

17
 18 *Human equivalent dose (HED) PODs were calculated using body weight to the ¾ power (BW^¾) scaling ([U.S. EPA,](#)
 19 [2011](#)).

20 **Effects Other Than Cancer Observed Following Inhalation Exposure**

21 Kidney effects are a potential human hazard of inhalation exposure to *tert*-butanol.
 22 Although no effects were observed in mice, kidney weights were increased in male and female rats
 23 following 13 weeks of inhalation exposure. In addition, the severity of nephropathy increased in
 24 male rats. No human studies are available to evaluate the effects of inhalation exposure. As
 25 discussed above for oral effects, endpoints specifically related to α_{2u}-globulin nephropathy were not
 26 considered for kidney hazard identification. Changes in kidney weights and severity of nephropathy
 27 in females, however, are considered a result of *tert*-butanol exposure and are appropriate for
 28 identifying a hazard to the kidney.

1 **Inhalation Reference Concentration (RfC) for Effects Other Than Cancer**

2 Kidney toxicity, represented by increases in severity of nephropathy, was chosen as the
 3 basis for the RfC (see Table ES-2). Although endpoints from a route-specific study were considered,
 4 the availability of a physiologically based pharmacokinetic (PBPK) model for *tert*-butanol in rats
 5 ([Borghoff et al., 2016](#)) allowed for more specific and sensitive equivalent inhalation PODs derived
 6 from a route-to-route extrapolation from the PODs of the oral [NTP \(1995\)](#) study. The POD adjusted
 7 for the human equivalent concentration (HEC) was 491 mg/m³ based on increases in severity of
 8 nephropathy.

9 The RfC was calculated by dividing the POD by a composite UF of 100 to account for
 10 toxicodynamic differences between animals and humans (3), derivation from a LOAEL (3), and
 11 interindividual differences in human susceptibility (10).

12 **Table ES-2. Organ/system-specific RfCs and overall RfC for *tert*-butanol**

Hazard	Basis	Point of departure* (mg/m³)	UF	Chronic RfC (mg/m³)	Study exposure description	Confidence
Kidney	Increases in severity of nephropathy	491	100	5 × 10 ⁰	Chronic	Medium
Overall RfC	Kidney	491	100	5 × 10⁰	Chronic	Medium

13
 14 *Continuous inhalation HEC that leads to the same average blood concentration of *tert*-butanol as drinking water
 15 exposure to the rat at the BMDL.

16 **Evidence of Human Carcinogenicity**

17 Under EPA’s cancer guidelines ([U.S. EPA, 2005a](#)), there is *suggestive evidence of carcinogenic*
 18 *potential* for *tert*-butanol. *tert*-Butanol induced kidney tumors in male (but not female) rats and
 19 thyroid tumors (primarily benign) in male and female mice following long-term administration in
 20 drinking water ([NTP, 1995](#)). The potential for carcinogenicity applies to all routes of human
 21 exposure.

1 **Quantitative Estimate of Carcinogenic Risk from Oral Exposure**

2 In accordance with EPA’s guidance on α_{2u} -globulin ([U.S. EPA, 1991b](#)), rat kidney tumors are
3 unsuitable for quantitative analysis because not enough data are available to determine the relative
4 contribution of α_{2u} -globulin nephropathy and other processes to the overall kidney tumor response.
5 A quantitative estimate of carcinogenic potential from oral exposure to *tert*-butanol was based on
6 the increased incidence of thyroid follicular cell adenomas in female B6C3F₁ mice and thyroid
7 follicular cell adenomas and carcinomas in male B6C3F₁ mice ([NTP, 1995](#)). The study included
8 histological examinations for tumors in many different tissues, contained three exposure levels and
9 controls, contained adequate numbers of animals per dose group (~50/sex/group), treated animals
10 for up to 2 years, and included detailed reporting of methods and results.

11 Although *tert*-butanol was considered to have only “suggestive evidence of carcinogenic
12 potential,” the NTP study was well conducted and suitable for quantitative analysis. Slope factors
13 were derived for thyroid tumors in female or male mice. The modeled *tert*-butanol POD was scaled
14 to HEDs according to EPA guidance by converting the BMDL₁₀ on the basis of (body weight)^{3/4}
15 scaling ([U.S. EPA, 2011, 2005a](#)). Using linear extrapolation from the BMDL₁₀, a human equivalent
16 oral slope factor was derived (slope factor = 0.1/BMDL₁₀). The resulting oral slope factor is **5 × 10⁻⁴**
17 **per mg/kg-day**.

18 **Quantitative Estimate of Carcinogenic Risk from Inhalation Exposure**

19 No chronic inhalation studies of exposure to *tert*-butanol are available. Although the mouse
20 thyroid tumors served as the basis for the oral slope factor, route-to-route extrapolation is not
21 possible for these thyroid effects in mice because the only PBPK model available is for rats.
22 Therefore, no quantitative estimate of carcinogenic risk could be determined for inhalation
23 exposure.

24 **Susceptible Populations and Lifestages for Cancer and Noncancer Outcomes**

25 Information is inadequate to identify any populations or lifestages that might be especially
26 susceptible to *tert*-butanol.

27 **Key Issues Addressed in Assessment**

28 Whether *tert*-butanol caused α_{2u} -globulin-associated nephropathy was evaluated ([U.S. EPA,](#)
29 [1991a](#)). The presence of α_{2u} -globulin in the hyaline droplets was confirmed in male rats by
30 α_{2u} -globulin immunohistochemical staining. Linear mineralization and tubular hyperplasia were
31 reported in male rats, although only in the chronic study. Other subsequent steps in the
32 pathological sequence, including necrosis, exfoliation, and granular casts, either were absent or
33 inconsistently observed across subchronic or chronic studies. None of these effects occurred in
34 female rats or in either sex of mice, although these endpoints were less frequently evaluated in
35 these models. Evidence implies that an α_{2u} -globulin MOA is operative, although it is relatively weak
36 in response to *tert*-butanol and is not solely responsible for the renal tubule nephropathy observed

1 in male rats. CPN also is instrumental in renal tubule nephropathy, in both male and female rats.
2 Several other effects in the kidney unrelated to α_{2u} -globulin were observed in female rats, including
3 suppurative inflammation, transitional epithelial hyperplasia, and increased kidney weights ([NTP,](#)
4 [1997, 1995](#)). These specific effects are considered the result of *tert*-butanol exposure and therefore
5 relevant to humans.

6 Concerning cancer, α_{2u} -globulin accumulation is indicated as relatively weak in response to
7 *tert*-butanol exposure and not the sole mechanism responsible for the renal tubule carcinogenicity
8 observed in male rats. CPN and other effects induced by both α_{2u} -globulin processes and *tert*-
9 butanol play a role in renal tubule nephropathy, and the evidence indicates that CPN augments the
10 renal tubule tumor induction associated with *tert*-butanol exposure in male rats. Poor dose-
11 response relationships between α_{2u} -globulin processes and renal tumors in male rats and a lack of
12 renal tumors in female rats despite increased CPN severity, however, suggest that other, unknown
13 processes contribute to renal tumor development. Based on this analysis of available MOA data,
14 these renal tumors are considered relevant to humans.

15 In addition, an increase in the incidence of thyroid follicular cell adenomas was observed in
16 male and female mice in a 2-year drinking water study ([NTP, 1995](#)). Thyroid follicular cell
17 hyperplasia was considered a preneoplastic effect associated with the thyroid tumors, and the
18 incidences of follicular cell hyperplasias were elevated in both male and female B6C3F₁ mice
19 following exposure. [U.S. EPA \(1998a\)](#) describes the procedures the Agency uses in evaluating
20 chemicals that are animal thyroid carcinogens. The available database is inadequate for concluding
21 that an antithyroid MOA is operating in mouse thyroid follicular cell tumorigenesis. No other MOAs
22 for thyroid tumors were identified, and the mouse thyroid tumors are considered relevant to
23 humans ([U.S. EPA 1998a](#)).

LITERATURE SEARCH STRATEGY | STUDY SELECTION AND EVALUATION

A literature search and screening strategy was used to identify literature characterizing the health effects of *tert*-butanol. This strategy consisted of a broad search of online scientific databases and other sources to identify all potentially pertinent studies. In subsequent steps, references were screened to exclude papers not pertinent to an assessment of the health effects of *tert*-butanol, and remaining references were sorted into categories for further evaluation. This section describes the literature search and screening strategy in detail.

The chemical-specific search was conducted in four online scientific databases, including PubMed, Web of Science, Toxline, and TSCATS through December 2016, using the keywords and limits described in Table LS-1. The overall literature search approach is shown graphically in Figure LS-1. Eight more citations were obtained using additional search strategies described in Table LS-2. After electronically eliminating duplicates from the citations retrieved through these databases, 3,138 unique citations were identified.

The resulting 3,138 citations were screened for pertinence and separated into categories as presented in Figure LS-1 using the title and either abstract or full text, or both, to examine the health effects of *tert*-butanol exposure. The inclusion and exclusion criteria used to screen the references and identify sources of health effects data are provided in Table LS-3.

- 12 references were identified as “Sources of Health Effects Data” and were considered for data extraction to evidence tables and exposure-response arrays.
- 202 references were identified as “Sources of Mechanistic and Toxicokinetic Data” and “Sources of Supporting Health Effects Data”; these included 41 studies describing physiologically based pharmacokinetic (PBPK) models and other toxicokinetic information, 73 studies providing genotoxicity and other mechanistic information, 1 human case report, 74 irrelevant exposure paradigms (including acute, dermal, eye irritation, and injection studies), 6 preliminary toxicity studies, and 7 physical dependency studies. Information from these studies was not extracted into evidence tables; however, these studies were considered as support for assessing *tert*-butanol health effects, for example, evaluation of mode of action and extrapolation of experimental animal findings to humans. Additionally, although still considered sources of health effects information, studies investigating the effects of acute and direct chemical exposures are generally less pertinent for characterizing health hazards associated with chronic oral and inhalation exposure. Therefore, information from these studies was not considered for extraction into evidence tables. Nevertheless, these studies were still evaluated as possible sources of supplementary health effects information.

- 128 references were identified as “Secondary Literature and Sources of Contextual Information” (e.g., reviews and other agency assessments); these references were retained as additional resources for development of the Toxicological Review.
- 2,796 references were identified as not being pertinent (not on topic) to an evaluation of the health effects of *tert*-butanol and were excluded from further consideration (see Figure LS-1 for exclusion categories and Table LS-3 for exclusion criteria). For example, health effect studies of gasoline and *tert*-butanol mixtures were not considered pertinent to the assessment because the separate effects of the gasoline or other chemical components could not be determined. Retrieving a large number of references that are not on topic is a consequence of applying an initial search strategy designed to cast a wide net and to minimize the possibility of missing potentially relevant health effects data.

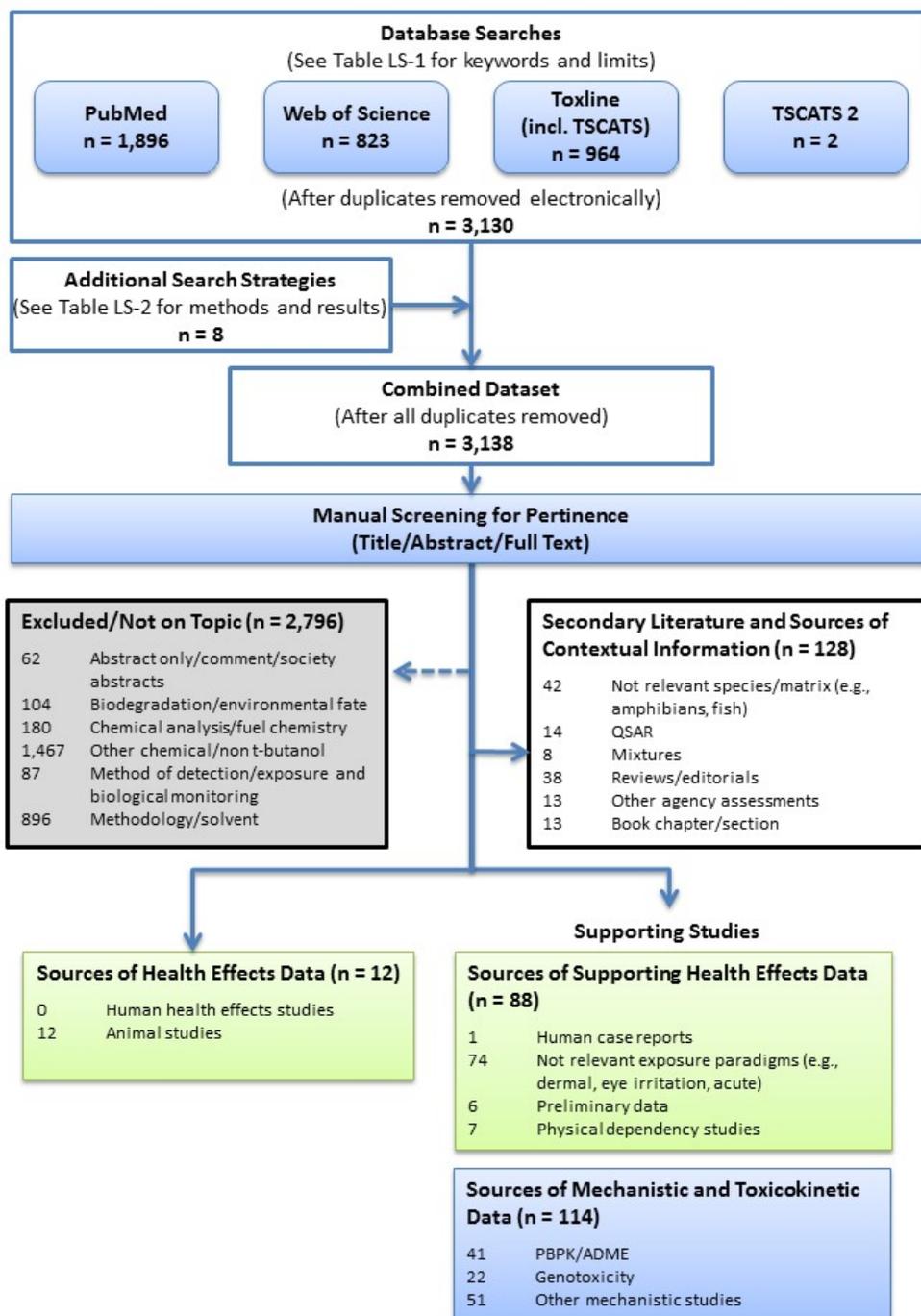
1 The complete list of references and the sorting of these materials can be found on the *tert*-
2 butanol project page of the HERO website at
3 https://hero.epa.gov/index.cfm/project/page/project_id/1543.

4 **Selection of Studies for Inclusion in Evidence Tables**

5 To summarize the important information systematically from the primary health effects
6 studies in the *tert*-butanol database, evidence tables were constructed in a standardized tabular
7 format as recommended by [NRC \(2011\)](#). Studies were arranged in evidence tables by effect, species,
8 duration, and design, and not by quality. Of the studies retained after the literature search and
9 screen, 12 studies were identified as “Sources of Health Effects Data” and were considered for
10 extraction into evidence tables for hazard identification in Chapter 1. Initial review found two
11 references ([Cirvello et al., 1995](#); [Lindamood et al., 1992](#)) to be publications of the [NTP \(1995\)](#) data
12 prior to the release of the final National Toxicology Program (NTP) report. One publication
13 ([Takahashi et al., 1993](#)) in the “Supplementary Studies” category also was based on data from the
14 NTP report. The interim publications and the final NTP report differed. The finalized [NTP \(1995\)](#)
15 report was considered the more complete and accurate presentation of the data; therefore, this
16 report was included in evidence tables and [Cirvello et al. \(1995\)](#), [Takahashi et al. \(1993\)](#), and
17 [Lindamood et al. \(1992\)](#) were not. Data from the remaining 10 references in the “Sources of Health
18 Effects Data” category were extracted into evidence tables.

19 Supplementary studies that contain pertinent information for the toxicological review and
20 augment hazard identification conclusions, such as genotoxic and mechanistic studies, studies
21 describing the kinetics and disposition of *tert*-butanol absorption and metabolism, pilot studies,
22 and one case report, were not included in the evidence tables. Short-term and acute studies
23 (including an 18-day study and a 14-day study by NTP), which used oral and inhalation exposures
24 performed primarily in rats, did not differ qualitatively from the results of the longer studies (i.e.,
25 ≥30-day exposure studies). These were grouped as supplementary studies, however, because the
26 database of chronic and subchronic rodent studies was considered sufficient for evaluating chronic
27 health effects of *tert*-butanol exposure. Additionally, studies of effects from chronic exposure are
28 most pertinent to lifetime human exposure (i.e., the primary characterization provided by IRIS

1 assessments) and are the focus of this assessment. Such supplementary studies are discussed in the
 2 narrative sections of Chapter 1 and are described in sections such as the “Mode of Action Analysis”
 3 to augment the discussion or presented in appendices, if they provide additional information.



4 **Figure LS-1. Summary of literature search and screening process for**
 5 ***tert*-butanol.**

1 **Table LS-1. Details of the search strategy employed for *tert*-butanol**

Database (Search date)	Keywords	Limits
PubMed (12/20/2012) (4/17/2014) (5/13/2015) (12/31/2016)	<i>tert</i> -butanol OR 75-65-0[<i>rn</i>] OR " <i>t</i> -butyl hydroxide" OR "2-methyl-2-propanol" OR "trimethyl carbinol" OR " <i>t</i> -butyl alcohol" OR <i>tert</i> -butanol OR " <i>tert</i> -butyl alcohol" OR <i>tert</i> -butyl alcohol[mesh]	None
Web of Science (12/20/2012) (4/17/2014) (5/13/2015) (12/31/2016)	Topic = (<i>tert</i> -butanol OR 75-65-0 OR " <i>t</i> -butyl hydroxide" OR "2-methyl-2-propanol" OR "trimethyl carbinol" OR " <i>t</i> -butyl alcohol" OR " <i>tert</i> -butanol" OR " <i>tert</i> -butyl alcohol")	Refined by: Research Areas = (cell biology OR respiratory system OR microscopy OR biochemistry molecular biology OR gastroenterology OR hepatology OR public environmental occupational health OR oncology OR physiology OR cardiovascular system cardiology OR toxicology OR life sciences biomedicine other topics OR hematology OR pathology OR neurosciences neurology OR developmental biology)
Toxline (includes TSCATS) (1/11/2013) (4/17/2014) (5/13/2015) (12/31/2016)	<i>tert</i> -butanol OR 75-65-0 [<i>rn</i>] OR <i>t</i> -butyl hydroxide OR 2-methyl-2-propanol OR trimethyl carbinol OR <i>t</i> -butyl alcohol OR <i>tert</i> -butanol OR <i>tert</i> -butyl alcohol OR <i>tert</i> -butyl alcohol	Not PubMed
TSCATS2 (1/4/2013) (4/17/2014) (5/13/2015) (12/31/2016)	75-65-0	None

2 **Table LS-2. Summary of additional search strategies for *tert*-butanol**

Approach used	Source(s)	Date performed	Number of additional references identified
Manual search of citations from reviews and public comments	Review article: McGregor (2010) . <i>Tertiary</i> -butanol: A toxicological review. <i>Crit Rev Toxicol</i> 40(8): 697-727.	1/2013	5
	Review article: Chen (2005) . Amended final report of the safety assessment of <i>t</i> -butyl alcohol as used in cosmetics. <i>Int J Toxicol</i> 24(2): 1-20.	1/2013	2
	Public comment article: Borghoff et al. (2016)	10/2016	1

Approach used	Source(s)	Date performed	Number of additional references identified
Manual search of citations from reviews conducted by other international and federal agencies	IPCS (1987a) . Butanols: Four isomers: 1-butanol, 2-butanol, <i>tert</i> -butanol, isobutanol [WHO EHC]. Geneva, Switzerland: World Health Organization.	1/2013	None
	OSHA (1992) . Occupational safety and health guideline for <i>tert</i> -butyl alcohol. Cincinnati, OH: Occupational Safety and Health Administration.	1/2013	None

1 **Table LS-3. Inclusion-exclusion criteria**

	Inclusion criteria	Exclusion criteria
Population	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Humans • Standard mammalian animal models, including rat, mouse, rabbit, guinea pig, monkey, dog 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ecological species* • Nonmammalian species*
Exposure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Exposure is to <i>tert</i>-butanol • Exposure is measured in an environmental medium (e.g., air, water, diet) • Exposure via oral, inhalation, or dermal routes 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Study population is not exposed to <i>tert</i>-butanol • Exposure to a mixture only (e.g., gasoline containing <i>tert</i>-butanol) • Exposure via injection (e.g., intravenous) • Exposure pattern less relevant to chronic health effects (e.g., acute)
Outcome	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Study includes a measure of one or more health effect endpoints, including effects on the nervous, musculoskeletal, cardiovascular, immune, hematological, endocrine, respiratory, urinary, and gastrointestinal systems; reproduction; development; liver; kidney; eyes; skin; and cancer • Physical dependency studies where withdrawal symptoms were evaluated after removal of <i>tert</i>-butanol treatment 	
Other		<p>Not on topic, including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Abstract only, editorial comments were not considered further because study was not potentially relevant • Bioremediation, biodegradation, or environmental fate of <i>tert</i>-butanol, including evaluation of wastewater treatment technologies and methods for remediation of contaminated water and soil • Chemical, physical, or fuel chemistry studies

	Inclusion criteria	Exclusion criteria
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Analytical methods for measuring/detecting/remotely sensing <i>tert</i>-butanol • Use of <i>tert</i>-butanol as a solvent or methodology for testing unrelated to <i>tert</i>-butanol • Not chemical specific: Studies that do not involve testing of <i>tert</i>-butanol • Foreign language studies that were not considered further because, based on title or abstract, judged not potentially relevant • QSAR studies

*Studies that met this exclusion criterion were not considered a source of health effects data or supplementary health effects data/mechanistic and toxicokinetic data, but were considered as sources of contextual information.

1 Database Evaluation

2 For this draft assessment, 12 references reported on experimental animal studies that
 3 comprised the primary sources of health effects data; no studies were identified that evaluated
 4 humans exposed to *tert*-butanol (e.g., cohort studies, ecological studies). The animal studies were
 5 evaluated using the study quality considerations outlined in the Preamble, considering aspects of
 6 design, conduct, or reporting that could affect the interpretation of results, overall contribution to
 7 the synthesis of evidence, and determination of hazard potential as noted in various EPA guidance
 8 documents ([U.S. EPA, 2005a](#), [1998b](#), [1996](#), [1991b](#)). The objective was to identify the stronger, more
 9 informative studies based on a uniform evaluation of quality characteristics across studies of
 10 similar design. As stated in the Preamble, studies were evaluated to identify the suitability of the
 11 study based on:

- Study design
- Nature of the assay and validity for its intended purpose
- Characterization of the nature and extent of impurities and contaminants of *tert*-butanol administered, if applicable
- Characterization of dose and dosing regimen (including age at exposure) and their adequacy to elicit adverse effects, including latent effects
- Sample sizes and statistical power to detect dose-related differences or trends
- Ascertainment of survival, vital signs, disease or effects, and cause of death
- Control of other variables that could influence the occurrence of effects

1 Additionally, several general considerations, presented in Table LS-4, were used in
2 evaluating the animal studies. Much of the key information for conducting this evaluation can be
3 determined based on study methods and how the study results were reported. Importantly, the
4 evaluation at this stage does not consider the direction or magnitude of any reported effects.

5 EPA considered statistical tests to evaluate whether the observations might be due to
6 chance. The standard for determining statistical significance of a response is a trend test or
7 comparison of outcomes in the exposed groups against those of concurrent controls. Studies that
8 did not report statistical testing were identified and, when appropriate, statistical tests were
9 conducted by EPA.

10 Information on study features related to this evaluation is reported in evidence tables and
11 documented in the synthesis of evidence. Discussion of study strengths and limitations are included
12 in the text, where relevant. If EPA's interpretation of a study differs from that of the study authors,
13 the draft assessment discusses the basis for the difference.

14 ***Experimental Animal Studies***

15 The experimental animal studies, comprised entirely of studies performed in rats and mice,
16 were associated with drinking water, oral gavage, liquid diets (i.e., maltose/dextrin), and inhalation
17 exposures to *tert*-butanol. With the exception of neurodevelopmental studies, these sources were
18 conducted according to Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development Good
19 Laboratory Practice (GLP) guidelines, presented extensive histopathological data, or clearly
20 presented their methodology; thus, these studies are considered high quality. These studies include
21 2-year bioassays using oral exposures in rats and mice; two subchronic drinking water studies in
22 rats and one in mice; an inhalation subchronic study in rats and mice; a reevaluation of the [NTP](#)
23 [\(1995\)](#) rat data; two oral developmental studies; two inhalation developmental studies; and a
24 single one-generation reproductive study that also evaluates other systemic effects (Table LS-5). A
25 more detailed discussion of any methodological concerns that were identified precedes each
26 endpoint evaluated in the hazard identification section. Overall, the experimental animal studies of
27 *tert*-butanol involving repeated oral or inhalation exposure were considered to be of acceptable
28 quality, and whether yielding positive, negative, or null results, were considered in assessing the
29 evidence for health effects associated with chronic exposure to *tert*-butanol.

1 **Table LS-4. Considerations for evaluation of experimental animal studies**

Methodological feature	Considerations (relevant information extracted into evidence tables)
Test animal	Suitability of the species, strain, sex, and source of the test animals
Experimental design	Suitability of animal age/lifestage at exposure and endpoint testing; periodicity and duration of exposure (e.g., hr/day, day/week); timing of endpoint evaluations; and sample size and experimental unit (e.g., animals, dams, litters)
Exposure	Characterization of test article source, composition, purity, and stability; suitability of the control (e.g., vehicle control); documentation of exposure techniques (e.g., route, chamber type, gavage volume); verification of exposure levels (e.g., consideration of homogeneity, stability, analytical methods)
Endpoint evaluation	Suitability of specific methods for assessing the endpoint(s) of interest
Results presentation	Data presentation for endpoint(s) of interest (including measures of variability) and for other relevant endpoints needed for results interpretation (e.g., maternal toxicity, decrements in body weight relative to organ weight)

2 **Table LS-5. Summary of experimental animal database**

Study category	Study duration, species/strain, and administration method
Chronic	2-year study in F344 rats (drinking water) NTP (1995) 2-year study in B6C3F ₁ mice (drinking water) NTP (1995)
Subchronic	13-week study in B6C3F ₁ mice (drinking water) NTP (1995) 13-week study in F344 rats (drinking water) NTP (1995) 13-week study in F344 rats (inhalation) NTP (1997) 13-week study in B6C3F ₁ mice (inhalation) NTP (1997) 10-week study in Wistar rats (drinking water) Acharya et al. (1997) , Acharya et al. (1995)
Reproductive	One-generation reproductive toxicity study in Sprague-Dawley rats (gavage) Huntingdon Life Sciences (2004) Huntingdon Life Sciences (2004)
Developmental	Developmental study (GD 6–20) in Swiss Webster mice (diet) Daniel and Evans (1982) Developmental study (GD 6–18) in CBA/J mice (drinking water) Faulkner et al. (1989) Developmental study (GD 6–18) in C57BL/6J mice (drinking water) Faulkner et al. (1989) Developmental study (GD 1–19) in Sprague-Dawley rats (inhalation) Nelson et al. (1989)
Neurodevelopmental	Neurodevelopmental study (GD 6–20) in Swiss Webster mice (diet) Daniel and Evans (1982) Neurodevelopmental study (GD 1–19) in Sprague-Dawley rats (inhalation) Nelson et al. (1991)

1 HAZARD IDENTIFICATION

1.1 OVERVIEW OF CHEMICAL PROPERTIES AND TOXICOKINETICS

1.1.1 Chemical Properties

tert-Butanol is a white crystalline solid or colorless, highly flammable liquid (above 25.7°C) with a camphor-like odor (NIOSH, 2005; IPCS, 1987a). *tert*-Butanol contains a hydroxyl chemical functional group; is miscible with alcohol, ether, and other organic solvents; and is soluble in water (IPCS, 1987a). Selected chemical and physical properties of *tert*-butanol are presented in Table 1-1.

Table 1-1. Physicochemical properties and chemical identity of *tert*-butanol

Characteristic	Information	Reference
Chemical name	<i>tert</i> -Butanol	HSDB (2007)
Synonyms/Trade names	<i>t</i> -Butyl alcohol; <i>tert</i> -Butanol; <i>tert</i> -Butyl alcohol; <i>t</i> -Butyl hydroxide; 1,1-Dimethylethanol; NCI-C55367; 2-Methyl-2-propanol; <i>tertiary</i> Butanol; Trimethyl carbinol; Trimethyl methanol; <i>t</i> -butyl alcohol; TBA	HSDB (2007) IPCS (1987b)
Chemical formula	C ₄ H ₁₀ O	HSDB (2007)
CASRN	75-65-0	HSDB (2007)
Molecular weight	74.12	HSDB (2007)
Melting point	25.7°C	HSDB (2007)
Boiling point	82.41°C	HSDB (2007)
Vapor pressure	40.7 mm Hg @ 25°C	HSDB (2007)
Density/Specific gravity	0.78581	HSDB (2007)
Flashpoint	15–23°C	ECHA (2017)
Water solubility at 25°C	1 × 10 ⁶ mg/L	HSDB (2007)
Octanol/Water Partition Coefficient (Log K _{ow})	0.317	ECHA (2017)
Henry's Law Constant	9.05 × 10 ⁻⁶ atm·m ³ /mole	HSDB (2007)
Odor threshold	219 mg/m ³	HSDB (2007)
Conversion factors	1 ppm = 3.031 mg/m ³ 1 mg/m ³ = 0.324 ppm	IPCS (1987b)

This document is a draft for review purposes only and does not constitute Agency policy.

Characteristic	Information	Reference
Chemical structure	$ \begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3 \\ \\ \text{H}_3\text{C} - \text{C} - \text{OH} \\ \\ \text{CH}_3 \end{array} $	HSDB (2007)

1 **1.1.2 Toxicokinetics**

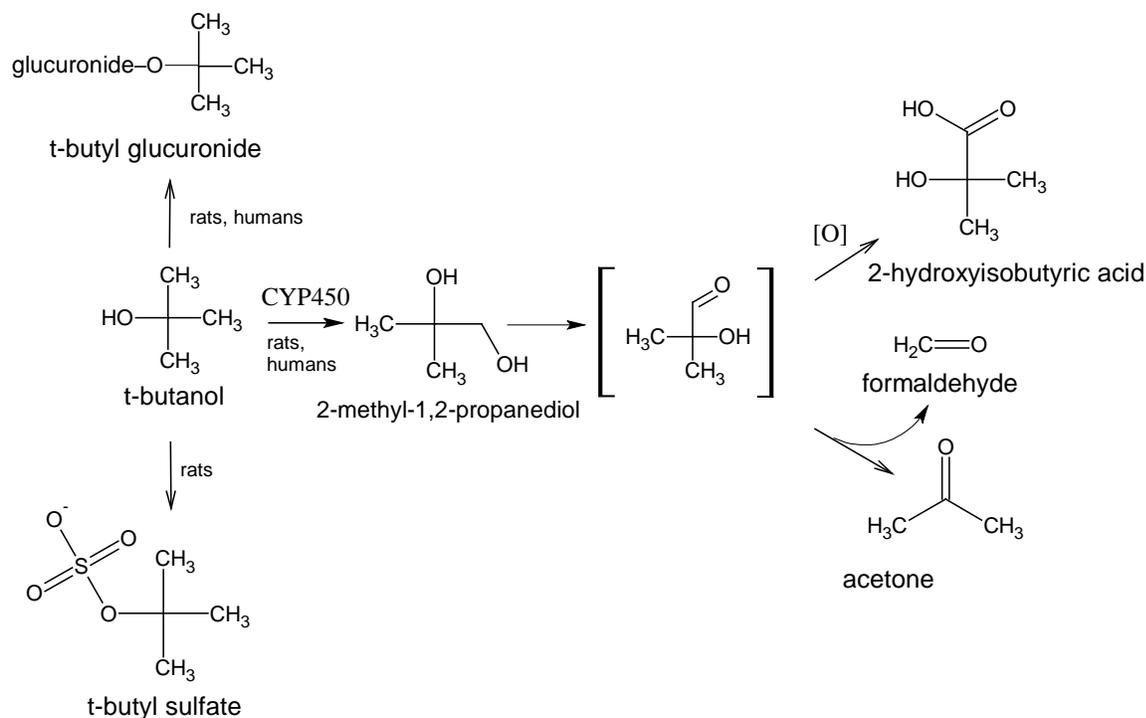
2 *tert*-Butanol is rapidly absorbed following exposure by oral and inhalation routes (see
3 Appendix B, Section B.1.1). Studies in experimental animals indicate that 99% of the compound was
4 absorbed after oral administration. Comparable blood levels of *tert*-butanol and its metabolites also
5 have been observed after acute oral or inhalation exposures in rats ([ARCO, 1983](#)). In another study
6 ([Faulkner et al., 1989](#)), blood concentrations indicated that absorption was complete at 1.5 hours
7 following oral gavage doses of *tert*-butanol in female mice.

8 *tert*-Butanol is distributed throughout the body following oral, inhalation, and i.v. exposures
9 ([Poet et al., 1997](#); [Faulkner et al., 1989](#); [ARCO, 1983](#)). Following exposure to *tert*-butanol in rats,
10 *tert*-butanol was found in kidney, liver, and blood, with male rats retaining more *tert*-butanol than
11 female rats ([Williams and Borghoff, 2001](#)).

12 A general metabolic scheme for *tert*-butanol, illustrating the biotransformation in rats and
13 humans, is shown in Figure 1-1 (see Appendix B.1.3).

14 Human data on the excretion of *tert*-butanol comes from studies of methyl *tert*-butyl ether
15 (MTBE) and ethyl *tert*-butyl ether (ETBE) ([Nihlén et al., 1998a, b](#)). The half-life of *tert*-butanol in
16 urine following MTBE exposure was 8.1 ± 2.0 hours (average of the 90.1- and 757-mg/m³ MTBE
17 doses); the half-life of *tert*-butanol in urine following ETBE exposure was 7.9 ± 2.7 hours (average
18 of 104- and 210-mg/m³ ETBE doses). These studies reported urinary levels of *tert*-butanol (not
19 including downstream metabolites) to be less than 1% of administered MTBE or ETBE
20 concentrations ([Nihlén et al., 1998a, b](#)). [Amberg et al. \(2000\)](#) observed a similar half-life of 9.8 ± 1.4
21 hours after human exposure to ETBE of 170 mg/m³. The half-life for *tert*-butanol in rat urine was
22 4.6 ± 1.4 hours at ETBE levels of 170 mg/m³.

23 A more detailed summary of *tert*-butanol toxicokinetics is provided in Appendix B,
24 Section B.1.



1 Source: [NSF International \(2003\)](#), [ATSDR \(1996\)](#), [Bernauer et al. \(1998\)](#), [Amberg et al. \(1999\)](#),
 2 and [Cederbaum and Cohen \(1980\)](#).

3 **Figure 1-1. Biotransformation of *tert*-butanol in rats and humans.**

4 **1.1.3 Description of Toxicokinetic Models**

5 No physiologically based pharmacokinetic (PBPK) models have been developed specifically
 6 for administration of *tert*-butanol. Some models have been used to study *tert*-butanol as the
 7 primary metabolite after oral or inhalation exposure to MTBE or ETBE in rats. The most recent
 8 models for MTBE oral and inhalation exposure include a component for the binding of *tert*-butanol
 9 to α_{2u} -globulin ([Borghoff et al., 2010](#); [Leavens and Borghoff, 2009](#)). These PBPK models were
 10 subsequently adapted for ETBE ([Borghoff et al., 2016](#); [Salazar et al., 2015](#)). A more detailed
 11 summary of the toxicokinetic models is provided in Appendix B, Section B.1.5.

12 **1.1.4 Chemicals Extensively Metabolized to *tert*-Butanol**

13 *tert*-Butanol is a metabolite of other compounds, including ETBE, MTBE, and *tert*-butyl
 14 acetate. Some of the toxicological effects observed in these compounds are attributed to *tert*-
 15 butanol. There are no assessments by national or international health agencies for ETBE. Animal
 16 studies demonstrate that chronic exposure to ETBE is associated with noncancer kidney effects,
 17 including increased kidney weights in male and female rats accompanied by increased chronic
 18 progressive nephropathy (CPN), urothelial hyperplasia (in males), and increased blood
 19 concentrations of total cholesterol, blood urea nitrogen, and creatinine ([Saito et al., 2013](#); [Suzuki et
 20 al., 2012](#)). In these studies, increased liver weight and centrilobular hypertrophy also were

1 observed in male and female rats exposed to ETBE. Liver adenomas and carcinomas were increased
2 in male rats following 2-year inhalation exposure ([Saito et al., 2013](#)).

3 In 1996, the U.S. Agency for Toxic Substances and Disease Registry's (ATSDR) *Toxicological*
4 *Profile for MTBE* ([ATSDR, 1996](#)) identified cancer effect levels of MTBE based on carcinogenicity
5 data in animals. ATSDR reported that inhalation exposure was associated with kidney cancer in rats
6 and liver cancer in mice. ATSDR concluded that oral exposure to MTBE might cause liver and
7 kidney damage and nervous system effects in rats and mice. The chronic inhalation minimal risk
8 level was derived based on incidence and severity of chronic progressive nephropathy in female
9 rats ([ATSDR, 1996](#)). In 1997, EPA's Office of Water concluded that MTBE is carcinogenic to animals
10 and poses a potential carcinogenic potential to humans based on an increased incidence of Leydig
11 cell adenomas of the testes, kidney tumors, lymphomas, and leukemia in exposed rats ([U.S. EPA,](#)
12 [1997](#)). In 1998, the International Agency for Research on Cancer (IARC) found "limited evidence" of
13 MTBE carcinogenicity in animals and placed MTBE in Group 3 (i.e., not classifiable as to
14 carcinogenicity in humans) ([IARC, 1999](#)). IARC reported that oral exposure in rats resulted in
15 testicular tumors in males and lymphomas and leukemias (combined) in females; inhalation
16 exposure in male rats resulted in renal tubule adenomas; and inhalation exposure in female mice
17 resulted in hepatocellular adenomas ([IARC, 1999](#)).

18 No assessments by national or international agencies or chronic studies for *tert*-butyl
19 acetate are available.

20 **1.2 PRESENTATION AND SYNTHESIS OF EVIDENCE BY ORGAN/SYSTEM**

21 **1.2.1 Kidney Effects**

22 *Synthesis of Effects in Kidney*

23 This section reviews the studies that investigated whether subchronic or chronic exposure
24 to *tert*-butanol can affect kidneys in humans or animals. The database examining kidney effects
25 following *tert*-butanol exposure contains eight studies (from five references) performed in rats or
26 mice ([Huntingdon Life Sciences, 2004](#); [Acharya et al., 1997](#); [NTP, 1997](#); [Acharya et al., 1995](#); [NTP,](#)
27 [1995](#)) and a reevaluation of the rat data from [NTP \(1995\)](#), published by [Hard et al. \(2011\)](#); no
28 human data are available. Studies using short-term and acute exposures that examined kidney
29 effects are not included in the evidence tables; they are discussed in the text, however, if they
30 provide data to inform mode of action (MOA) or hazard identification. *tert*-Butanol exposure
31 resulted in kidney effects after both oral (drinking water) and inhalation exposure in both sexes of
32 rats (Table 1-1, Table 1-2, Figure 1-1, and Figure 1-2); studies are arranged in the evidence tables
33 first by effect, then by route, and then duration.

34 The design, conduct, and reporting of each study were reviewed, and each study was
35 considered adequate to provide information pertinent to this assessment. Interpretation of non-
36 neoplastic kidney endpoints in rats, however, is somewhat complicated by the common occurrence

1 of age-related, spontaneous lesions characteristic of chronic progressive nephropathy (CPN) ([NTP,](#)
2 [2015](#); [Hard et al., 2013](#); [Melnick et al., 2012](#); [U.S. EPA, 1991a](#));
3 (<http://ntp.niehs.nih.gov/nnl/urinary/kidney/necp/index.htm>). CPN is more severe in male rats
4 than in females and is particularly common in the Sprague-Dawley and Fischer 344 strains. Dietary
5 and hormonal factors play a role in modifying CPN, although the etiology is largely unknown (see
6 further discussion below).

7 **Kidney weight.** Changes in kidney weight (absolute and relative to body weight) were
8 observed in male and female F344 rats following exposures of 13 weeks (oral and inhalation) ([NTP,](#)
9 [1997](#)) and 15 months (oral) ([NTP, 1995](#)). [Huntingdon Life Sciences \(2004\)](#) also reported increases
10 in absolute and relative kidney weight in Sprague-Dawley rats administered *tert*-butanol orally for
11 approximately 10 weeks (tabular data presented in the Supplemental Information to this
12 Toxicological Review). Changes were observed in both male and female rats, which exhibited strong
13 dose-related increases in absolute kidney weight (Spearman's rank coefficient > 0.72) following
14 either oral or inhalation exposures (Figure 1-3). Of the oral (Figure 1-4 and inhalation (Figure 1-5)
15 mouse studies, only inhalation exposure in female mice induced a strong dose-related increase
16 (Spearman's rank coefficient = 0.9) in absolute kidney weights.

17 Measures of relative, as opposed to absolute, organ weight are sometimes preferred
18 because they account for changes in body weight that might influence changes in organ weight
19 ([Bailey et al., 2004](#)), although potential impact should be evaluated. For *tert*-butanol, body weight in
20 exposed animals noticeably decreased at the high doses relative to controls in the oral 13-week and
21 2-year studies ([NTP, 1995](#)). In this case, the decreased body weight of the animals
22 disproportionately affects the relative kidney weight measures because body weights are changed
23 more than kidney weights, resulting in an artificial exaggeration of relative weight changes. Thus,
24 absolute weight was determined the more reliable measure of kidney weight change for this
25 assessment. Additionally, a recent analysis indicates that increased absolute, but not relative,
26 subchronic kidney weights are significantly correlated with chemically induced histopathological
27 findings in the kidney in chronic and subchronic studies ([Craig et al., 2014](#)). Although relative and
28 absolute kidney weight data are both presented in exposure-response arrays (and in evidence
29 tables in the Supplemental Information), the absolute measures were considered more informative
30 for determining *tert*-butanol hazard potential.

31 **Kidney histopathology.** Treatment-related histopathological changes were observed in the
32 kidneys of male and female F344 rats following 13-week and 2-year oral exposures ([NTP, 1995](#))
33 and male F344 rats following a 13-week inhalation exposure ([NTP, 1997](#)). Similarly, male Wistar
34 rats exposed for approximately 10 weeks exhibited an increase in histopathological kidney lesions
35 ([Acharya et al., 1997](#); [Acharya et al., 1995](#)). B6C3F₁ mice, however, did not exhibit histopathological
36 changes when exposed for 13 weeks and 2 years via the oral route ([NTP, 1995](#)) and 13 weeks via
37 the inhalation route ([NTP, 1997](#)). More specific details on the effects observed in rats, reported by
38 [NTP \(1997, 1995\)](#) and [Acharya et al. \(1997\)](#); ([1995](#)) are described below.

1 Nephropathy and severity of nephropathy were reported in male and female rats in the
2 13-week oral studies ([NTP, 1995](#)). The nephropathy was characterized as “...a spontaneous
3 background lesion...typically consist[ing] of scattered renal tubules lined by basophilic
4 regenerating tubule epithelium.” ([NTP, 1995](#)). [NTP \(1995\)](#) noted that the increase in severity of
5 nephropathy was related to *tert*-butanol and “characterized by an increase in the number and size
6 of foci of regeneration.” The severity of nephropathy increased, compared with controls, in the
7 13-week male rats, which exhibited nephropathy in 94% of all exposed animals and 70% of
8 controls. Conversely, lesion severity was unchanged in the females, although nephropathy
9 incidence significantly increased with *tert*-butanol exposure. In the 13-week inhalation study ([NTP,](#)
10 [1997](#)), nephropathy was present in all but two male rats, including controls. [NTP \(1997\)](#)
11 characterized the reported chronic nephropathy in control male rats as “1 to 3 scattered foci of
12 regenerative tubules per kidney section. Regenerative foci were characterized by tubules with
13 cytoplasmic basophilia, increased nuclear/cytoplasmic ratio, and occasionally thickened basement
14 membranes and intraluminal protein casts.” In exposed groups, the severity generally increased
15 from minimal to mild with increasing dose as “evidenced by an increased number of foci.” No
16 treatment-related kidney histopathology was reported in the female rats exposed through
17 inhalation ([NTP, 1997](#)).

18 In the 2-year oral study by [NTP \(1995\)](#), nephropathy was reported at 15 months and 2
19 years. The [NTP \(1995\)](#) characterization of nephropathy following chronic exposure included
20 multiple lesions: “thickened tubule and glomerular basement membranes, basophilic foci of
21 regenerating tubule epithelium, intratubule protein casts, focal mononuclear inflammatory cell
22 aggregates within areas of interstitial fibrosis and scarring, and glomerular sclerosis.” At 15
23 months, male and female rats (30/30 treated; 10/10 controls) had nephropathy, and the severity
24 scores ranged from minimal to mild. At 2 years, male and female rats (149/150 treated; 49/50
25 controls) also had nephropathy, and although the severity was moderate in the control males and
26 minimal to mild in the control females, severity increased with *tert*-butanol exposure in both sexes
27 ([NTP, 1995](#)).

28 The lesions collectively described by [NTP \(1997, 1995\)](#) as nephropathy and noted as
29 common spontaneous lesions in rats are consistent with CPN. The effects characterized as CPN are
30 related to age and not considered histopathological manifestations of chemically induced toxicity
31 [see [U.S. EPA \(1991a\)](#), p. 35 for further details and a list of the typical, observable histopathological
32 features of CPN]. CPN is a common and well-established constellation of age-related lesions in the
33 kidney of rats, for which no known counterpart in aging humans exists. CPN is not a specific
34 diagnosis per se but, rather, an aggregate term describing a spectrum of effects. Individually, these
35 lesions or processes could occur in a human kidney, and their occurrence as a group in the aged rat
36 kidney does not make each one rat-specific if a treatment effect occurs for one or more of them. In
37 addition, exacerbation of one of more of these processes likely reflects some type of cell injury,
38 which is relevant to the human kidney. These lesions, however, are frequently exacerbated by

1 chemical treatment ([NTP, 1997](#)), as evidenced by the dose-related increases in severity of the
2 nephropathy compared to female and male rat controls. The chemical-related changes in increased
3 severity of nephropathy are included in the consideration of hazard potential.

4 [NTP \(1995\)](#) observed other kidney lesions, described as being associated with nephropathy
5 but diagnosed separately. Renal mineralization is defined by [NTP \(1995\)](#) as “focal mineral deposits
6 primarily at the corticomedullary junction.” This mineralization is distinct from linear
7 mineralization, which is considered a lesion characteristic of $\alpha_2\mu$ -globulin nephropathy (for further
8 discussion of this particular lesion, see *Mode of Action Analysis—Kidney Effects*). The mineralization
9 is characterized as distinct linear deposits along radiating medullary collecting ducts. An increased
10 incidence of linear mineralization was limited to exposed males in the 2-year oral study ([NTP,](#)
11 [1995](#)).

12 Renal (corticomedullary) mineralization was observed in essentially all female rats at all
13 reported treatment durations. A dose-related, increased incidence of mineralization was reported
14 in male rats at the end of the 13-week, 15-month, and 2-year oral evaluations ([NTP, 1995](#)). [NTP](#)
15 [\(1995\)](#) describes focal, medullary mineralization as being associated with CPN but notes that focal
16 mineralization is “usually more prominent in untreated females than in untreated males,” which is
17 consistent with the widespread appearance of this lesion in females. Corticomedullary
18 mineralization (also referred to as nephrocalcinosis) in the rat is a common (especially in females)
19 background/incidental finding that is not generally considered to be clinically important to rats or
20 relevant to human health ([Frazier et al., 2012](#)). Thus, renal mineralization was not included in the
21 consideration of hazard potential.

22 Two other histological kidney lesions observed in male and female rats are suppurative
23 inflammation and transitional epithelial hyperplasia. These lesions were observed in the 2-year
24 oral [NTP \(1995\)](#) study. [NTP \(1995\)](#) and [Frazier et al. \(2012\)](#), describe these lesions as related to the
25 nephropathy (characterized above as common and spontaneous and considered CPN). Incidence of
26 suppurative inflammation in female rats was low in the control group and increased with dose, with
27 incidences $\geq 24\%$ in the two highest dose groups, compared with controls. In comparison, 20% of
28 the control males exhibited suppurative inflammation, and the changes in incidence were not dose
29 related (incidences ranging from 18 to 36%). To determine if the severity of these lesions was
30 positively associated with the severity of nephropathy, contingency tables comparing the
31 occurrence of suppurative inflammation with nephropathy in individual rats were arranged by
32 severity and analyzed with Spearman’s rank correlation tests to determine strength of associations
33 for each comparison (Table 1-4 and Table 1-5). Suppurative inflammation and nephropathy were
34 moderately correlated in females ($\rho = 0.47$) and weakly correlated in males ($\rho = 0.17$). The data
35 indicate that CPN correlates with the induction of suppurative inflammation; however, the
36 inflammation in female rats is also treatment related. Given that CPN is also dose-dependently
37 increased in male and female rats ([Salazar et al., 2015](#)), disentangling the relative contribution of
38 CPN and *tert*-butanol in the exacerbation of suppurative inflammation is problematic.

1 Transitional epithelial hyperplasia was observed in both male and female rats exposed
2 orally ([NTP, 1995](#)). In the control males, 50% of the animals exhibited transitional epithelial
3 hyperplasia and the incidence and severity increased with dose. Only the mid- and high-dose
4 females, however, exhibited dose-related increases in incidence and severity of transitional
5 epithelial hyperplasia. This lesion was not reported in the control or low-dose females. [NTP \(1995\)](#)
6 described transitional epithelial hyperplasia as increased layers of the transitional epithelial lining
7 of the renal pelvis; study authors noted no progression of this hyperplastic lesion to neoplasia. To
8 determine if the severity of the hyperplasia was positively associated with the severity of
9 nephropathy, contingency tables comparing the occurrence of transitional epithelial hyperplasia
10 with nephropathy in individual rats were arranged by severity and analyzed with Spearman's rank
11 correlation tests to determine strength of associations for each comparison (Table 1-6 and Table
12 1-7). Transitional epithelial hyperplasia and nephropathy were strongly correlated (Spearman's
13 rank coefficient = 0.66) in males and moderately correlated (Spearman's rank coefficient = 0.44) in
14 females. The transitional epithelial hyperplasia observed in male and female rats is consistent with
15 advanced CPN ([Frazier et al., 2012](#)). Similar to suppurative inflammation, transitional epithelial
16 hyperplasia is both increased by dose and correlated with nephropathy, which is also dose related.
17 Thus, disentangling the contributions of dose and nephropathy in the development of transitional
18 epithelial hyperplasia is not possible. Transitional epithelial hyperplasia should not be confused
19 with another lesion noted in the 2-year evaluation, renal tubule hyperplasia, which was considered
20 preneoplastic (for further details regarding this type of hyperplasia, see the discussion under
21 *Kidney tumors*, below).

22 Additional histopathological changes, including increased tubular degeneration,
23 degeneration of the basement membrane of the Bowman's capsule, diffused glomeruli, and
24 glomerular vacuolation were noted in a 10-week study in male Wistar rats ([Acharya et al., 1997](#);
25 [Acharya et al., 1995](#)). A decrease in glutathione in the kidney accompanied these changes, which the
26 study authors noted as potentially indicative of oxidative damage. [Acharya et al. \(1997\)](#); [Acharya et al. \(1995\)](#)
27 used one dose and a control group and did not report incidences. The increased tubule
28 degeneration and glomerular vacuolation could be characterized as tubular atrophy and glomerular
29 hyalinization, respectively, consistent with CPN; however, without quantitative information,
30 examining the differences between the control and treated animals to determine if CPN plays a role
31 in development of these effects is not possible. Although based on the noted appearance of the
32 effects in the treated animals compared with controls, the effects likely are treatment related.

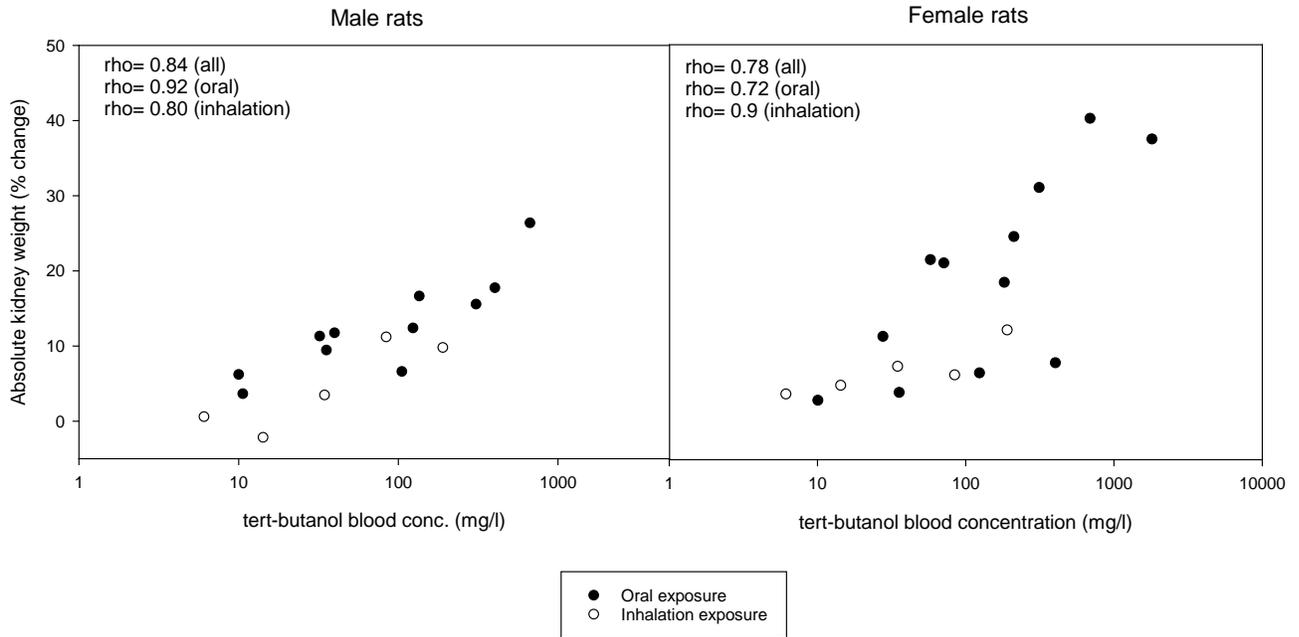
33 Serum or urinary biomarkers informative of kidney toxicity were not measured in the
34 studies discussed above. Some changes occurred in urinalysis parameters (e.g., decreased urine
35 volume and increased specific gravity), accompanied by reduced water consumption, and thus
36 might not be related to an effect of kidney function ([NTP, 1995](#)).

37 ***Kidney tumors.*** The kidney is also a target organ for cancer effects (Table 1-3, Figure 1-1).
38 Male F344 rats had an increased incidence of combined renal tubule adenomas or carcinomas in

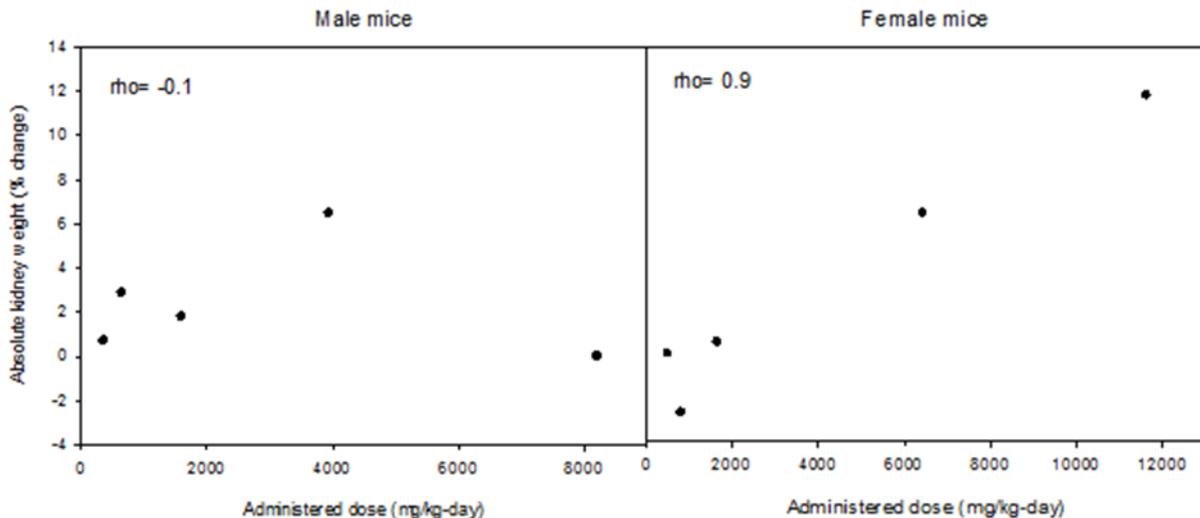
1 the 2-year oral bioassay ([Hard et al., 2011](#); [NTP, 1995](#)). The increase in tumors from control was
2 similar in the low- and high-dose groups and highest in the mid-dose group. Overall, tumor
3 increases were statistically significant in trend testing, which accounted for mortality ($p \leq 0.018$).
4 Mortality increased with increasing exposure ($p = 0.001$); increased mortality alone, however, does
5 not account for the highest tumor incidence occurring at the middle dose.

6 Increases in incidence and severity of renal tubule hyperplasia also were observed in male
7 rats. [NTP \(1995\)](#) stated that “[t]he pathogenesis of proliferative lesions of renal tubule epithelium is
8 generally considered to follow a progression from hyperplasia to adenoma to carcinoma ([Hard,
9 1986](#)).” Similarly, EPA considered the renal tubule hyperplasia to be a preneoplastic effect
10 associated with the renal tubule tumors. Renal tubule hyperplasia was found in one high-dose
11 female ([NTP, 1995](#)); no increase in severity was observed. This effect in females, which was not
12 considered toxicologically significant, is not discussed further. Two renal tubular adenocarcinomas
13 in male mice also were reported ([NTP, 1995](#)), one each in the low- and high-dose groups, but were
14 not considered by NTP to be “biologically noteworthy changes”; thus the tumors in mice are not
15 discussed further.

16 A Pathology Working Group, sponsored by Lyondell Chemical Company, reevaluated the
17 kidney changes in the NTP 2-year study to determine if additional histopathological changes could
18 be identified to inform the MOA for renal tubule tumor development ([Hard et al., 2011](#)). In all cases,
19 working group members were blinded to treatment groups and used guidelines published by [Hard
20 and Wolf \(1999\)](#) and refinements reported by ([Hard and Seely, 2006](#)); [Hard and Seely \(2005\)](#) and
21 [Hard \(2008\)](#). The group’s report and analysis by [Hard et al. \(2011\)](#) confirmed the NTP findings of
22 renal tubule hyperplasia and renal tubule tumors in male rats at 2 years. In particular, they
23 reported similar overall tumor incidences in the exposed groups. [Hard et al. \(2011\)](#), however,
24 reported fewer renal tubule adenomas and carcinomas in the control group than in the original NTP
25 study. As a result, all treated groups had statistically significant increases in renal tubule adenomas
26 and carcinomas (combined) when compared to controls. Additionally, [Hard et al. \(2011\)](#) considered
27 fewer tumors to be carcinomas than did the original NTP study. Results of both [NTP \(1995\)](#) and the
28 reanalysis by [Hard et al. \(2011\)](#) are included in Table 1-3 and Figure 1-1.

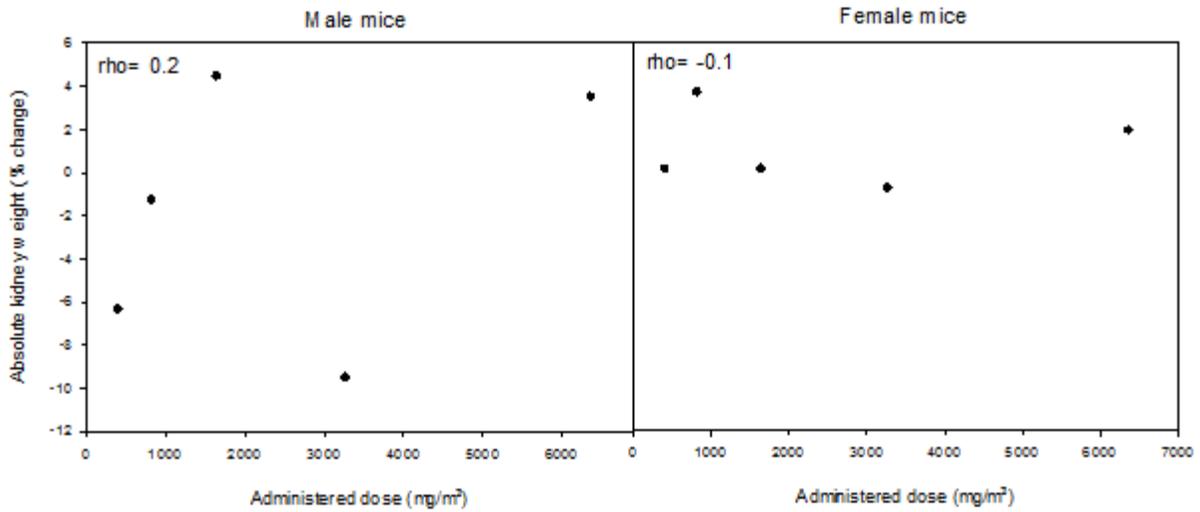


1 **Figure 1-2. Comparison of absolute kidney weight change in male and female**
 2 **rats across oral and inhalation exposure based on internal blood**
 3 **concentration. Spearman rank correlation coefficient (rho) was calculated to**
 4 **evaluate the direction of a monotonic association (e.g., positive value =**
 5 **positive association) and the strength of association.**



6
 7 **Figure 1-3. Comparison of absolute kidney weight change in male and female**
 8 **mice following oral exposure based on administered concentration. Spearman**
 9 **rank correlation coefficient (rho) was calculated to evaluate the direction of a**
 10 **monotonic association (e.g., positive value = positive association) and the**
 11 **strength of association.**

This document is a draft for review purposes only and does not constitute Agency policy.



1 **Figure 1-4. Comparison of absolute kidney weight change in male and female**
2 **mice following inhalation exposure based on administered concentration.**
3 **Spearman rank correlation coefficient (rho) was calculated to evaluate the**
4 **direction of a monotonic association (e.g., positive value = positive**
5 **association) and the strength of association.**

1 **Table 1-2. Changes in kidney histopathology in animals following exposure to**
 2 **tert-butanol**

Reference and study design	Results																																																
<p>Acharya et al. (1997) Acharya et al. (1995) Wistar rat; 5–6 males/treatment Drinking water (0 or 0.5%), 0 or 575 mg/kg-d 10 weeks</p>	<p>↑ tubular degeneration, degeneration of the basement membrane of the Bowman’s capsule, diffused glomeruli, and glomerular vacuolation (no incidences reported) ↓ kidney glutathione (~40%)*</p>																																																
<p>NTP (1995) F344/N rat; 10/sex/treatment Drinking water (0, 2.5, 5, 10, 20, or 40 mg/mL) M: 0, 230, 490, 840, 1,520, 3,610^a mg/kg-d F: 0, 290, 590, 850, 1,560, 3,620^a mg/kg-d 13 weeks</p>	<p>Incidence (severity):</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th colspan="3">Males</th> <th colspan="3">Females</th> </tr> <tr> <th><u>Dose</u> (mg/kg-d)</th> <th><u>Minerali-</u> <u>zation^b</u></th> <th><u>Nephro-</u> <u>pathy^c</u></th> <th><u>Dose</u> (mg/kg-d)</th> <th><u>Minerali-</u> <u>zation^b</u></th> <th><u>Nephro-</u> <u>pathy^c</u></th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>0/10</td> <td>7/10 (1.0)</td> <td>0</td> <td>10/10 (1.7)</td> <td>2/10 (1.0)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>230</td> <td>0/10</td> <td>10/10 (1.6*)</td> <td>290</td> <td>10/10 (2.0)</td> <td>3/10 (1.0)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>490</td> <td>2/10 (1.5)</td> <td>10/10 (2.6*)</td> <td>590</td> <td>10/10 (2.0)</td> <td>5/10 (1.0)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>840</td> <td>8/10*(1.4)</td> <td>10/10 (2.7*)</td> <td>850</td> <td>10/10 (2.0)</td> <td>7/10* (1.0)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1,520</td> <td>4/10*(1.0)</td> <td>10/10 (2.6*)</td> <td>1,560</td> <td>10/10 (2.0)</td> <td>8/10* (1.0)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>3,610^a</td> <td>4/10*(1.0)</td> <td>7/10 (1.1)</td> <td>3,620^a</td> <td>6/10 (1.2)</td> <td>7/10* (1.0)</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Males			Females			<u>Dose</u> (mg/kg-d)	<u>Minerali-</u> <u>zation^b</u>	<u>Nephro-</u> <u>pathy^c</u>	<u>Dose</u> (mg/kg-d)	<u>Minerali-</u> <u>zation^b</u>	<u>Nephro-</u> <u>pathy^c</u>	0	0/10	7/10 (1.0)	0	10/10 (1.7)	2/10 (1.0)	230	0/10	10/10 (1.6*)	290	10/10 (2.0)	3/10 (1.0)	490	2/10 (1.5)	10/10 (2.6*)	590	10/10 (2.0)	5/10 (1.0)	840	8/10*(1.4)	10/10 (2.7*)	850	10/10 (2.0)	7/10* (1.0)	1,520	4/10*(1.0)	10/10 (2.6*)	1,560	10/10 (2.0)	8/10* (1.0)	3,610 ^a	4/10*(1.0)	7/10 (1.1)	3,620 ^a	6/10 (1.2)	7/10* (1.0)
Males			Females																																														
<u>Dose</u> (mg/kg-d)	<u>Minerali-</u> <u>zation^b</u>	<u>Nephro-</u> <u>pathy^c</u>	<u>Dose</u> (mg/kg-d)	<u>Minerali-</u> <u>zation^b</u>	<u>Nephro-</u> <u>pathy^c</u>																																												
0	0/10	7/10 (1.0)	0	10/10 (1.7)	2/10 (1.0)																																												
230	0/10	10/10 (1.6*)	290	10/10 (2.0)	3/10 (1.0)																																												
490	2/10 (1.5)	10/10 (2.6*)	590	10/10 (2.0)	5/10 (1.0)																																												
840	8/10*(1.4)	10/10 (2.7*)	850	10/10 (2.0)	7/10* (1.0)																																												
1,520	4/10*(1.0)	10/10 (2.6*)	1,560	10/10 (2.0)	8/10* (1.0)																																												
3,610 ^a	4/10*(1.0)	7/10 (1.1)	3,620 ^a	6/10 (1.2)	7/10* (1.0)																																												
<p>NTP (1995) B6C3F₁ mouse; 10/sex/treatment Drinking water (0, 2.5, 5, 10, 20, or 40 mg/mL) M: 0, 350, 640, 1,590, 3,940, 8,210^a mg/kg-d F: 0, 500, 820, 1,660, 6,430, 11,620^a mg/kg-d 13 weeks</p>	<p>Study authors indicated no treatment-related changes in kidney-related histopathology (histopathological data not provided for the 13-week study)</p>																																																

Toxicological Review of tert-Butyl Alcohol

Reference and study design	Results				
<p>NTP (1995) F344/N rat; 60/sex/treatment (10/sex/treatment evaluated at 15 months interim) Drinking water (0, 1.25, 2.5, 5, 10 mg/mL) M: 0, 90, 200, 420^a mg/kg-d F: 0, 180, 330, 650^a mg/kg-d 2 years</p>	Incidence (severity):				
	Males				
	<u>Dose</u> (mg/kg-d)	<u>Mineralization^b</u> (interim)	<u>Mineralization^b</u> (terminal)	<u>Linear</u> <u>mineralization^b</u> (terminal)	
	0	1/10 (1.0)	26/50 (1.0)	0/50	
	90	2/10 (1.0)	28/50 (1.1)	5/50* (1.0)	
	200	5/10 (1.8)	35/50 (1.3)	24/50* (1.2)	
	420 ^a	9/10* (2.3)	48/50* (2.2)	46/50* (1.7)	
	<u>Dose</u> (mg/kg-d)	<u>Transitional</u> <u>epithelial</u> <u>hyperplasia</u>	<u>Nephropathy^c</u> <u>severity</u>	<u>Inflammation</u> (suppurative) <u>incidence</u>	
	0	25/50 (1.7)	3.0	10/50	
	90	32/50 (1.7)	3.1	18/50	
	200	36/50* (2.0)	3.1	12/50	
	420 ^a	40/50* (2.1)	3.3*	9/50	
	Females				
	<u>Dose</u> (mg/kg-d)	<u>Mineralization^b</u> <u>Interim</u>	<u>Mineralization^b</u> <u>Terminal</u>	<u>Inflammation</u> (suppurative) <u>incidence</u>	
	0	10/10 (2.8)	49/50 (2.6)	2/50	
	180	10/10 (2.9)	50/50 (2.6)	3/50	
	330	10/10 (2.9)	50/50 (2.7)	13/50*	
	650 ^a	10/10 (2.8)	50/50 (2.9)	17/50*	
<u>Dose</u> (mg/kg-d)	<u>Transitional</u> <u>epithelial</u> <u>hyperplasia</u>	<u>Nephropathy^c</u> <u>severity</u>			
0	0/50	1.6			
180	0/50	1.9*			
330	3/50 (1.0)	2.3*			
650 ^a	17/50*(1.4)	2.9*			

Reference and study design	Results																					
<p>NTP (1995) B6C3F₁ mouse; 60/sex/treatment Drinking water (0, 5, 10, or 20 mg/mL) M: 0, 540, 1,040, or 2,070^a mg/kg-d F: 0, 510, 1,020, or 2,110 mg/kg-d 2 years</p>	<p>No treatment-related changes in kidney-related histopathology observed</p>																					
<p>NTP (1997) F344/N rat; 10/sex/treatment Inhalation analytical concentration: 0, 134, 272, 542, 1,080, or 2,101 ppm (0, 406, 824, 1,643, 3,273 or 6,368 mg/m³) (dynamic whole-body chamber) 6 hr/d, 5 d/wk 13 weeks Generation method (Sonimist Ultrasonic spray nozzle nebulizer), analytical concentration and method were reported</p>	<p>Male</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th><u>Concentration (mg/m³)</u></th> <th><u>Incidence of chronic nephropathy^d</u></th> <th><u>Average severity of chronic nephropathy</u></th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>9/10</td> <td>1.0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>406</td> <td>8/10</td> <td>1.4</td> </tr> <tr> <td>824</td> <td>9/10</td> <td>1.4</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1,643</td> <td>10/10</td> <td>1.6</td> </tr> <tr> <td>3,273</td> <td>10/10</td> <td>1.9</td> </tr> <tr> <td>6,368</td> <td>10/10</td> <td>2.0</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Females: no treatment-related changes in kidney-related histopathology observed Severity categories: 1 = minimal, 2= mild. No results from statistical tests reported</p>	<u>Concentration (mg/m³)</u>	<u>Incidence of chronic nephropathy^d</u>	<u>Average severity of chronic nephropathy</u>	0	9/10	1.0	406	8/10	1.4	824	9/10	1.4	1,643	10/10	1.6	3,273	10/10	1.9	6,368	10/10	2.0
<u>Concentration (mg/m³)</u>	<u>Incidence of chronic nephropathy^d</u>	<u>Average severity of chronic nephropathy</u>																				
0	9/10	1.0																				
406	8/10	1.4																				
824	9/10	1.4																				
1,643	10/10	1.6																				
3,273	10/10	1.9																				
6,368	10/10	2.0																				
<p>NTP (1997) B6C3F₁ mouse; 10/sex/treatment Inhalation analytical concentration: 0, 134, 272, 542, 1,080, or 2,101 ppm (0, 406, 824, 1,643, 3,273 or 6,368 mg/m³) (dynamic whole-body chamber) 6 hr/d, 5 d/wk 13 weeks Generation method (Sonimist Ultrasonic spray nozzle nebulizer), analytical concentration and method were reported</p>	<p>No treatment-related changes in kidney-related histopathology observed</p>																					

- 1 *Statistically significant $p \leq 0.05$, as determined by the study authors.
- 2 ^aThe high-dose group had an increase in mortality.
- 3 ^bMineralization defined in [NTP \(1995\)](#) as focal mineral deposits, primarily at the corticomedullary junction. Linear
- 4 mineralization was defined as foci of distinct linear deposits along radiating medullary collecting ducts; linear
- 5 mineralization not observed in female rats.

1 ^cNephropathy defined in [NTP \(1995\)](#) as lesions, including thickened tubule and glomerular basement membranes,
 2 basophilic foci of regenerating tubule epithelium, intratubule protein casts, focal mononuclear inflammatory cell
 3 aggregates within areas of interstitial fibrosis and scarring, and glomerular sclerosis.

4 ^dNephropathy characterized in [NTP \(1997\)](#) as scattered foci of regenerative tubules (with cytoplasmic basophilia,
 5 increased nuclear/cytoplasmic ratio, and occasionally thickened basement membranes and intraluminal protein
 6 casts).
 7

8 Note: Conversions from drinking water concentrations to mg/kg-d performed by study authors.

9 Conversion from ppm to mg/m³ is 1 ppm = 3.031 mg/m³.

10 **Table 1-3. Changes in kidney tumors in animals following exposure to**
 11 **tert-butanol**

Reference and study design	Results							
NTP (1995) F344/N rat; 60/sex/treatment (10/sex/treatment evaluated at 15 months) Drinking water (0, 1.25, 2.5, 5, or 10 mg/mL) M: 0, 90, 200, or 420 ^a mg/kg-d F: 0, 180, 330, or 650 ^a mg/kg-d 2 years	Male	<u>Renal tubule hyperplasia (standard and extended evaluation combined)</u>	<u>Renal tubule adenoma (single)</u>	<u>Renal tubule adenoma (multiple)</u>				
				<u>Dose (mg/kg-d)</u>	0	14/50 (2.3)	7/50	1/50
				90	20/50 (2.3)	7/50	4/50	
				200	17/50 (2.2)	10/50	9/50*	
	420 ^a	25/50* (2.8)	10/50	3/50				
	<u>Dose (mg/kg-d)</u>	<u>Renal tubule carcinoma</u>	<u>Renal tubule adenoma (single or multiple) or carcinoma</u>					
	0			8/50				
	90			13/50				
	200			19/50*				
	420 ^a			13/50				
	Female	<u>Renal tubule hyperplasia</u>	<u>Renal tubule adenoma (single)</u>	<u>Renal tubule adenoma (multiple)</u>				
	<u>Dose (mg/kg-d)</u>			0	0/50			
	180			0/50	0/50			
	330			0/50	0/50			
	650 ^a			1/50 (1.0)	0/50	0/50		

Reference and study design	Results				
	<u>Dose</u> (mg/kg-d)	<u>Renal tubule carcinoma</u>	<u>Renal tubule adenoma (single or multiple) or carcinoma</u>		
	0	0/50	0/50		
	180	0/50	0/50		
	330	0/50	0/50		
	650 ^a	0/50	0/50		
	Based on standard and extended evaluations (combined). Results do not include the animals sacrificed at 15 months.				
Hard et al. (2011) Reanalysis of the slides from male rats (all slides in controls and high-dose groups of males and females, and slides from all other males with renal tumors) in the NTP (1995) study (see above)	Male <u>Dose</u> (mg/kg-d)	<u>Renal tubule adenoma (single)</u>	<u>Renal tubule adenoma (multiple)</u>	<u>Renal tubule carcinoma</u>	<u>Renal tubule adenoma (single or multiple) or carcinoma</u>
	0	3/50	1/50	0/50	4/50
	90	9/50	3/50	1/50	13/50*
	200	9/50	9/50	0/50	18/50*
	420	9/50	3/50	1/50	12/50*
NTP (1995) B6C3F ₁ mouse; 60/sex/treatment Drinking water (0, 5, 10, or 20 mg/mL) M: 0, 540, 1,040, or 2,070 ^a mg/kg-d F: 0, 510, 1,020, or 2,110 mg/kg-d 2 years	No increases in kidney-related tumors. Two renal tubule adenocarcinomas, one in the low-dose and one in the high-dose groups, were observed in male mice. These tumors were not considered treatment related.				

- 1 *Statistically significant $p \leq 0.05$, as determined by the study authors.
- 2 ^aThe high-dose group had an increase in mortality.
- 3 Note: Conversions from drinking water concentrations to mg/kg-d performed by study authors.

1 **Table 1-4. Comparison of nephropathy and suppurative inflammation in**
 2 **individual male rats from the 2-year NTP *tert*-butanol bioassay**

Suppurative inflammation	Nephropathy				
	None	Minimal	Mild	Moderate	Marked
None	2	1	55	82	51
Minimal	0	0	3	23	16
Mild	0	0	1	4	2
Moderate	0	0	0	0	0
Marked	0	0	0	0	0

3 Spearman’s rank correlation test (1-sided), $p = 0.0015$, $r_s = 0.17$

4 **Table 1-5. Comparison of nephropathy and suppurative inflammation in**
 5 **individual female rats from the 2-year NTP *tert*-butanol bioassay**

Suppurative inflammation	Nephropathy				
	None	Minimal	Mild	Moderate	Marked
None	7	67	90	37	4
Minimal	0	1	5	14	13
Mild	0	0	0	1	1
Moderate	0	0	0	0	0
Marked	0	0	0	0	0

6 Spearman’s rank correlation test (1-sided), $p < 0.0001$, $r_s = 0.47$

7 **Table 1-6. Comparison of nephropathy and transitional epithelial hyperplasia**
 8 **in individual male rats from the 2-year NTP *tert*-butanol bioassay**

Transitional epithelial hyperplasia	Nephropathy				
	None	Minimal	Mild	Moderate	Marked
None	2	1	51	52	1
Minimal	0	0	4	26	9
Mild	0	0	2	25	42
Moderate	0	0	2	6	17
Marked	0	0	0	0	0

9 Spearman’s rank correlation test (1-sided), $p < 0.0001$, $r_s = 0.66$

1 **Table 1-7. Comparison of nephropathy and transitional epithelial hyperplasia**
 2 **in individual female rats from the 2-year NTP *tert*-butanol bioassay**

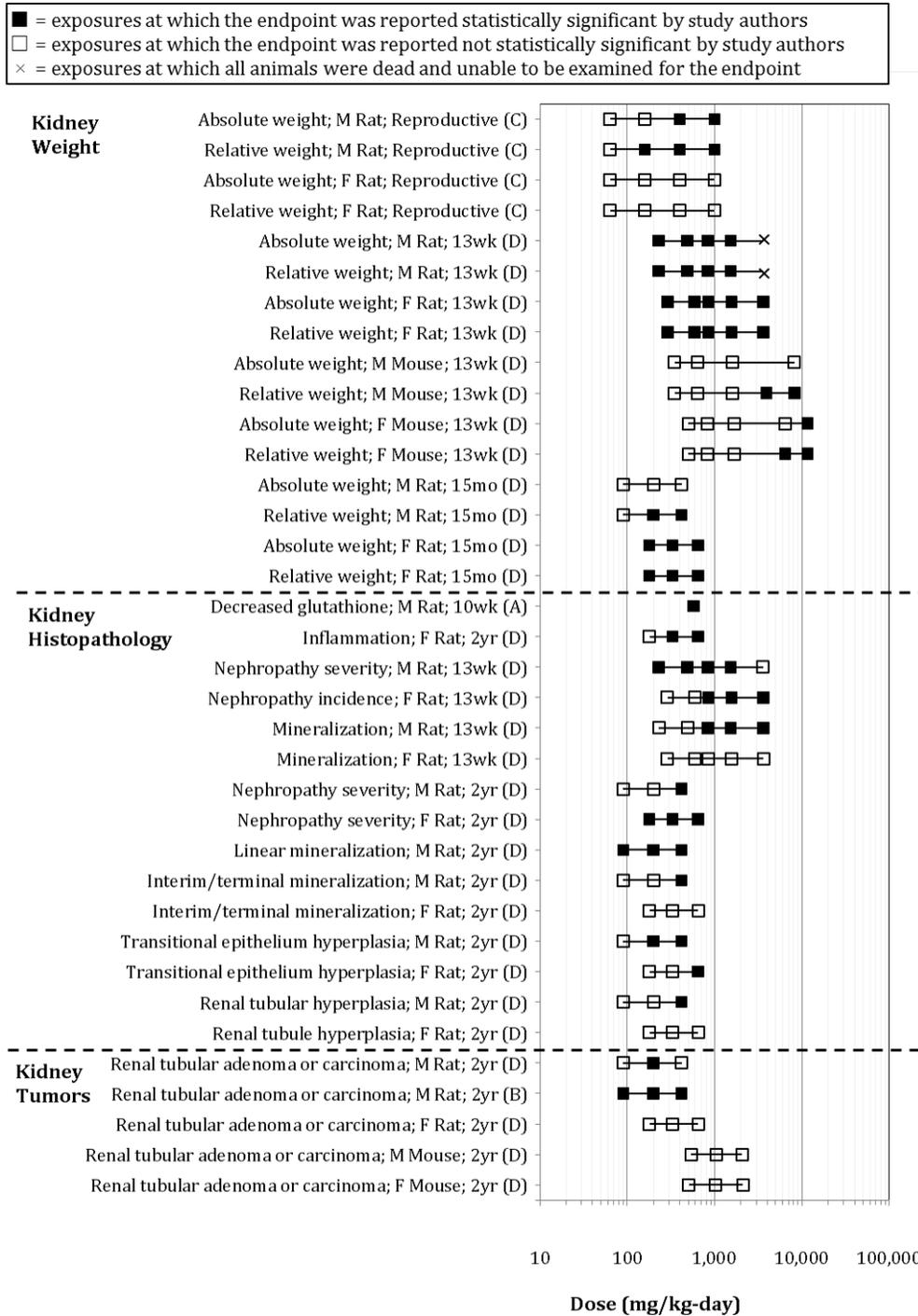
Transitional epithelial hyperplasia	Nephropathy				
	None	Minimal	Mild	Moderate	Marked
None	7	68	95	43	7
Minimal	0	0	0	8	6
Mild	0	0	0	1	5
Moderate	0	0	0	0	0
Marked	0	0	0	0	0

3 Spearman’s rank correlation test (1-sided), $p < 0.0001$, $r_s = 0.437$

4 **Table 1-8. Comparison of CPN and renal tubule hyperplasia with kidney**
 5 **adenomas and carcinomas in male rats from the 2-year NTP *tert*-butanol**
 6 **bioassay**

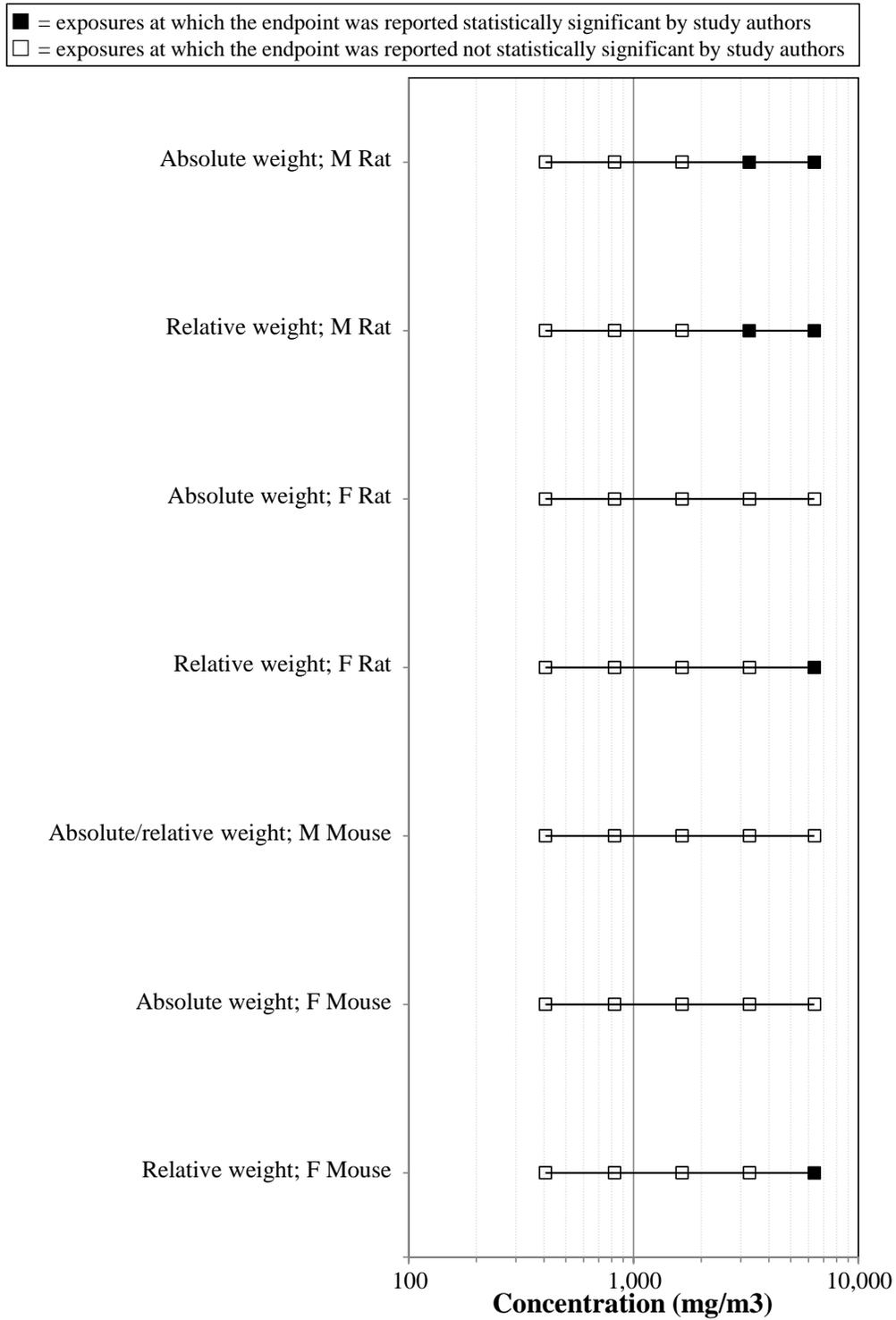
CPN	Renal Tumors Absent	Renal Tumors Present	Renal tubule hyperplasia	Renal Tumors Absent	Renal Tumors Present
None	2	0	None	133	29
Minimal	1	0	Minimal	17	2
Mild	57	2	Mild	17	13
Moderate	93	16	Moderate	10	3
Marked	34	35	Marked	10	6

7 Spearman’s rank correlation test (1-sided): CPN, $p < 0.0001$, $r_s = 0.430$; renal tubule hyperplasia, $p = 0.01$, $r_s = 0.161$



1 Sources: (A) [Acharya et al. \(1997\)](#); (1995); (B) [Hard et al. \(2011\)*](#); (C) [Huntingdon Life Sciences \(2004\)](#) (D)
 2 [NTP \(1995\)](#); *reanalysis of [NTP \(1995\)](#).

3 **Figure 1-5. Exposure response array for kidney effects following oral exposure**
 4 **to tert-butanol.**



1 Source: [NTP \(1997\)](#).

2 **Figure 1-6. Exposure-response array of kidney effects following inhalation**
 3 **exposure to *tert*-butanol (13-week studies, no chronic studies available).**

This document is a draft for review purposes only and does not constitute Agency policy.

1 **Mode of Action Analysis—Kidney Effects**

2 a) α_{2u} -Globulin-Associated Renal Tubule Nephropathy and Carcinogenicity

3 One disease process to consider when interpreting kidney effects in rats is related to the
4 accumulation of α_{2u} -globulin protein. α_{2u} -Globulin, a member of a large superfamily of low-
5 molecular-weight proteins, was first characterized in male rat urine. Such proteins have been
6 detected in various tissues and fluids of most mammals (including humans), but the particular
7 isoform of α_{2u} -globulin commonly detected in male rat urine is considered specific to that sex and
8 species. Exposure to chemicals that induce α_{2u} -globulin accumulation can initiate a sequence of
9 histopathological events leading to kidney tumorigenesis. Because α_{2u} -globulin-associated renal
10 tubule nephropathy and carcinogenicity occurring in male rats are presumed not relevant for
11 assessing human health hazards ([U.S. EPA, 1991a](#)), evaluating the data to determine if α_{2u} -globulin
12 plays a role is important. The role of α_{2u} -globulin accumulation in the development of renal tubule
13 nephropathy and carcinogenicity observed following *tert*-butanol exposure was evaluated using the
14 [U.S. EPA \(1991a\)](#) Risk Assessment Forum Technical panel report, *Alpha_{2u}-Globulin: Association with*
15 *Chemically Induced Renal Toxicity and Neoplasia in the Male Rat*. This report provides specific
16 guidance for evaluating renal tubule tumors in male rats that are related to chemical exposure for
17 the purpose of risk assessment, based on an examination of the potential involvement of
18 α_{2u} -globulin accumulation.

19 Studies in the *tert*-butanol database evaluated and reported effects on the kidney, providing
20 some evidence to evaluate this MOA. Additionally, several studies were identified that specifically
21 evaluated the role of α_{2u} -globulin in *tert*-butanol-induced renal tubule nephropathy and
22 carcinogenicity ([Borghoff et al., 2001](#); [Williams and Borghoff, 2001](#); [Takahashi et al., 1993](#)). Because
23 the evidence reported in these studies is specific to α_{2u} -globulin accumulation, it is presented in this
24 section; it was not included in the animal evidence tables in the previous section.

25 The hypothesized sequence of α_{2u} -globulin renal tubule nephropathy, as described by [U.S.](#)
26 [EPA \(1991a\)](#), is as follows. Chemicals that induce α_{2u} -globulin accumulation do so rapidly.
27 α_{2u} -Globulin accumulating in hyaline droplets is deposited in the S2 (P2) segment of the proximal
28 tubule within 24 hours of exposure. Hyaline droplets are a normal constitutive feature of the
29 mature male rat kidney; they are particularly evident in the S2 (P2) segment of the proximal tubule
30 and contain α_{2u} -globulin ([U.S. EPA, 1991a](#)). Abnormal increases in hyaline droplets have more than
31 one etiology and can be associated with the accumulation of different proteins. As hyaline droplet
32 deposition continues, single-cell necrosis occurs in the S2 (P2) segment, which leads to exfoliation
33 of these cells into the tubule lumen within 5 days of chemical exposure. In response to the cell loss,
34 cell proliferation occurs in the S2 (P2) segment after 3 weeks and continues for the duration of the
35 exposure. After 2 or 3 weeks of exposure, the cell debris accumulates in the S3 (P3) segment of the
36 proximal tubule to form granular casts. Continued chemical exposure for 3 to 12 months leads to
37 the formation of calcium hydroxyapatite in the papillae which results in linear mineralization. After

1 1 or more years of chemical exposure, these lesions can result in the induction of renal tubule
2 adenomas and carcinomas (Figure 1-7).

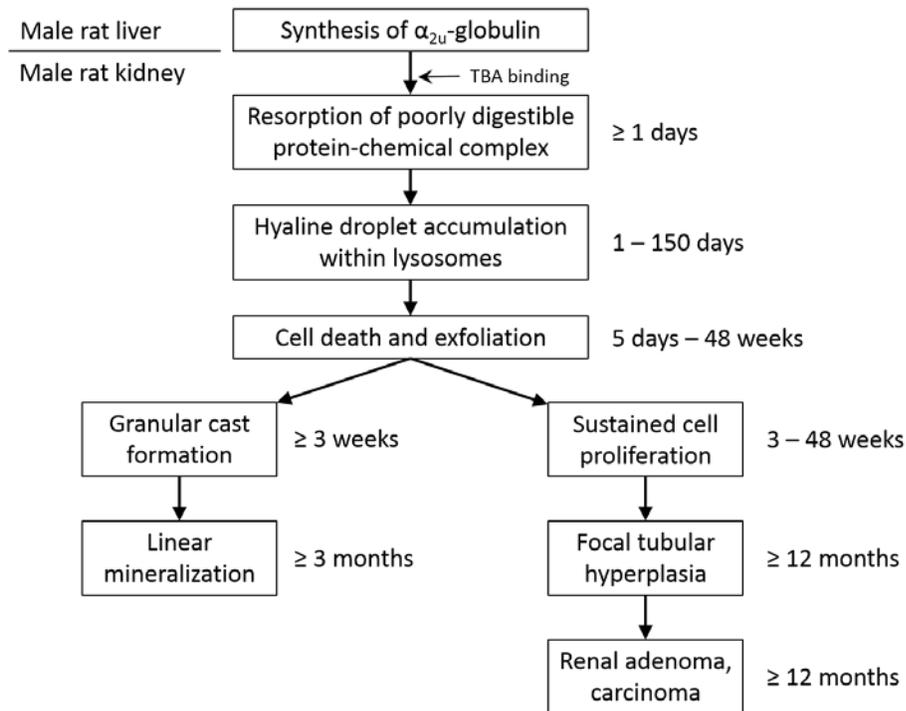
3 [U.S. EPA \(1991a\)](#) identified two questions that must be addressed to determine the extent
4 to which α_{2u} -globulin-mediated processes induce renal tubule nephropathy and carcinogenicity.
5 First, whether the α_{2u} -globulin process occurs in male rats and influences renal tubule tumor
6 development must be determined. Second, whether the renal effects in male rats exposed to *tert*-
7 butanol are due solely to the α_{2u} -globulin process must be determined.

8 [U.S. EPA \(1991a\)](#) stated the criteria for answering the first question in the affirmative are as
9 follows:

- 10 1) hyaline droplets are larger and more numerous in treated male rats,
- 11 2) the protein in the hyaline droplets in treated male rats is α_{2u} -globulin (i.e.,
12 immunohistochemical evidence), and
- 13 3) several (but not necessarily all) additional steps in the pathological sequence appear in
14 treated male rats as a function of time, dose, and progressively increasing severity consistent with
15 the understanding of the underlying biology, as described above, and illustrated in Figure 1-7.

16 The available data relevant to this first question are summarized in Table 1-9, Figure 1-8,
17 and Figure 1-9, and are evaluated below.

1



2
3

Source: Adapted from [Swenberg and Lehman-McKeeman \(1999\)](#) and [U.S. EPA \(1991a\)](#).

4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12

Figure 1-7. Temporal pathogenesis of α_{2u} -globulin-associated nephropathy in male rats. α_{2u} -Globulin synthesized in the livers of male rats is delivered to the kidney, where it can accumulate in hyaline droplets and be retained by epithelial cells lining the S2 (P2) segment of the proximal tubules. Renal pathogenesis following continued *tert*-butanol exposure and increasing droplet accumulation can progress stepwise from increasing epithelial cell damage, death and dysfunction leading to the formation of granular casts in the corticomedullary junction, linear mineralization of the renal papillae, and carcinogenesis of the renal tubular epithelium.

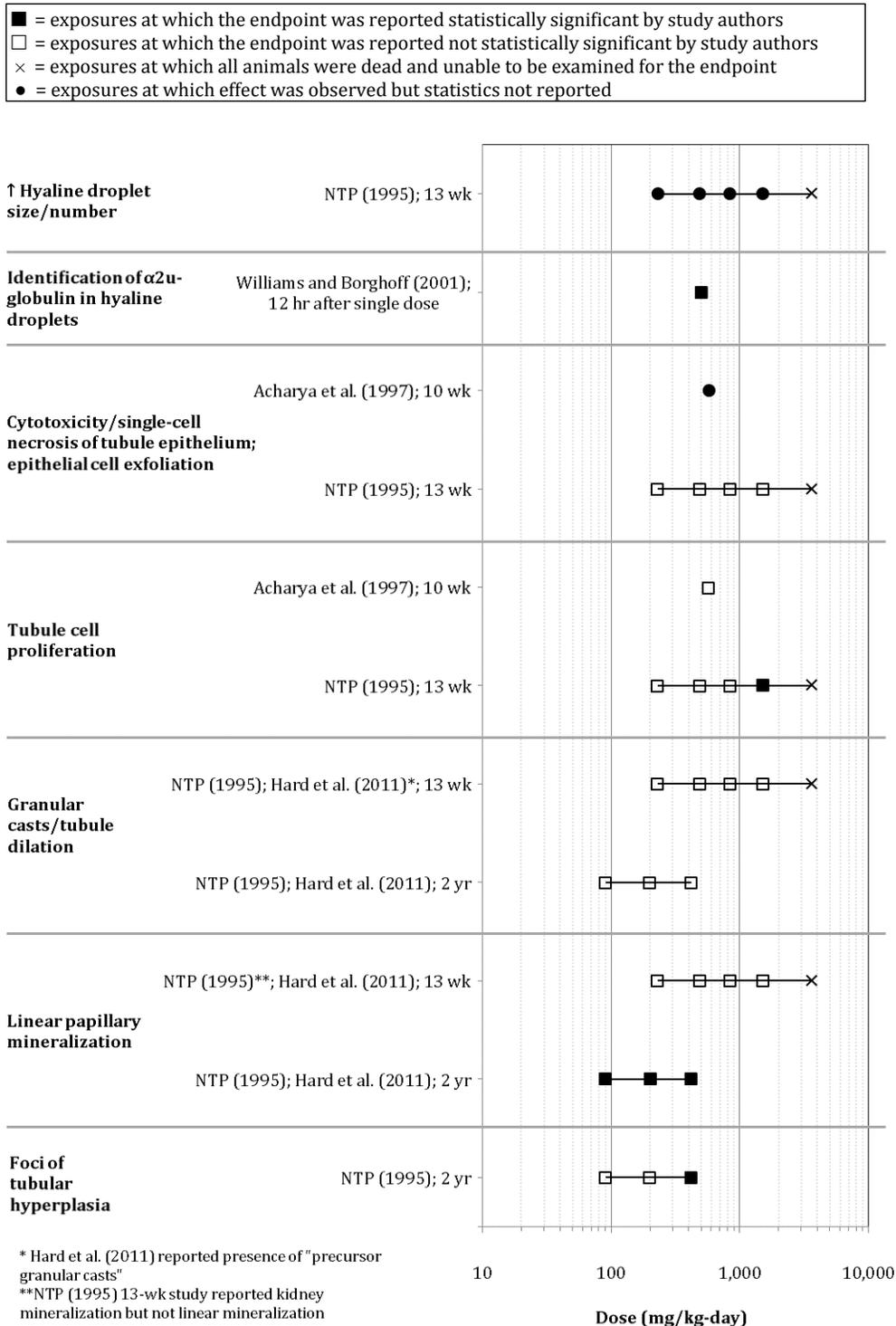
1 **Table 1-9. Summary of data on the α_{2u} -globulin process in male rats exposed**
 2 **to tert-butanol**

Duration	Dose	Results	Comments	Reference
1) Hyaline droplets are increased in size and number				
10 d (inhalation)	0, 758, 1,364, 5,304 mg/m ³	+	stat sig at 5,304 mg/m ³ ; stat sig trend	Borghoff et al. (2001)
13 wk (inhalation)	0, 3,273, 6,368 mg/m ³	–		NTP (1997)^a
13 wk (oral)	0, 230, 490, 840, 1,520, 3,610 mg/kg-d	(+)	observed in all but highest dose group	NTP (1995)
2) The protein in the hyaline droplets is α_{2u}globulin				
10 d (inhalation)	0, 758, 1,364, 5,304 mg/m ³	+	stat sig at 5,304 mg/m ³ ; stat sig trend	Borghoff et al. (2001)
12 h (elapsed time following single oral dose)	0, 500 mg/kg	+		Williams and Borghoff (2001)
3) Several (but not necessarily all) additional steps in the pathological sequence are present in male rats, such as:				
<i>a) Subsequent cytotoxicity and single-cell necrosis of tubule epithelium, with exfoliation of degenerate epithelial cells</i>				
10 wk (oral)	0, 575 mg/kg-d	(+)	degeneration of renal tubules reported	Acharya et al. (1997)
13 wk (oral)	0, 230, 490, 840, 1,520, 3,610 mg/kg-d	–		NTP (1995)
<i>b) Sustained regenerative tubule cell proliferation (NOTE: The positive studies below reported cell proliferation but did not observe necrosis or cytotoxicity; therefore, that the results indicate regenerative proliferation is occurring cannot be assumed.)</i>				
10 wk (oral)	0, 575 mg/kg-d	–		Acharya et al. (1997)
10 d (inhalation)	0, 758, 1,364, 5,304 mg/m ³	+	stat sig at all doses; stat sig trend	Borghoff et al. (2001)
13 wk (oral)	0, 230, 490, 840, 1,520, 3,610 mg/kg-d	+	elevated at 840 mg/kg-d; stat sig at 1,520 mg/kg-d	NTP (1995)
<i>c) Development of intraluminal granular casts from sloughed cellular debris, with consequent tubule dilation</i>				
13 wk (oral)	0, 230, 490, 840, 1,520, 3,610 mg/kg-d	–; (+) ^b		NTP (1995); Hard et al. (2011)^c
2 yr (oral)	0, 90, 200, 420 mg/kg-d	–		NTP (1995); Hard et al. (2011)^d

This document is a draft for review purposes only and does not constitute Agency policy.

Duration	Dose	Results	Comments	Reference
<i>d) Linear mineralization of tubules in the renal papilla</i>				
13 wk (oral)	0, 230, 490, 840, 1,520, 3,610 mg/kg-d	–		NTP (1995) ; Hard et al. (2011) ^c
2 yr (oral)	0, 90, 200, 420 mg/kg-d	+; (+)	all doses stat sig	NTP (1995) ; Hard et al. (2011) ^d
<i>e) Foci of tubular hyperplasia</i>				
2 yr (oral)	0, 90, 200, 420 mg/kg-d	+	stat sig trend at all doses; stat sig at 420 mg/kg-d	NTP (1995)

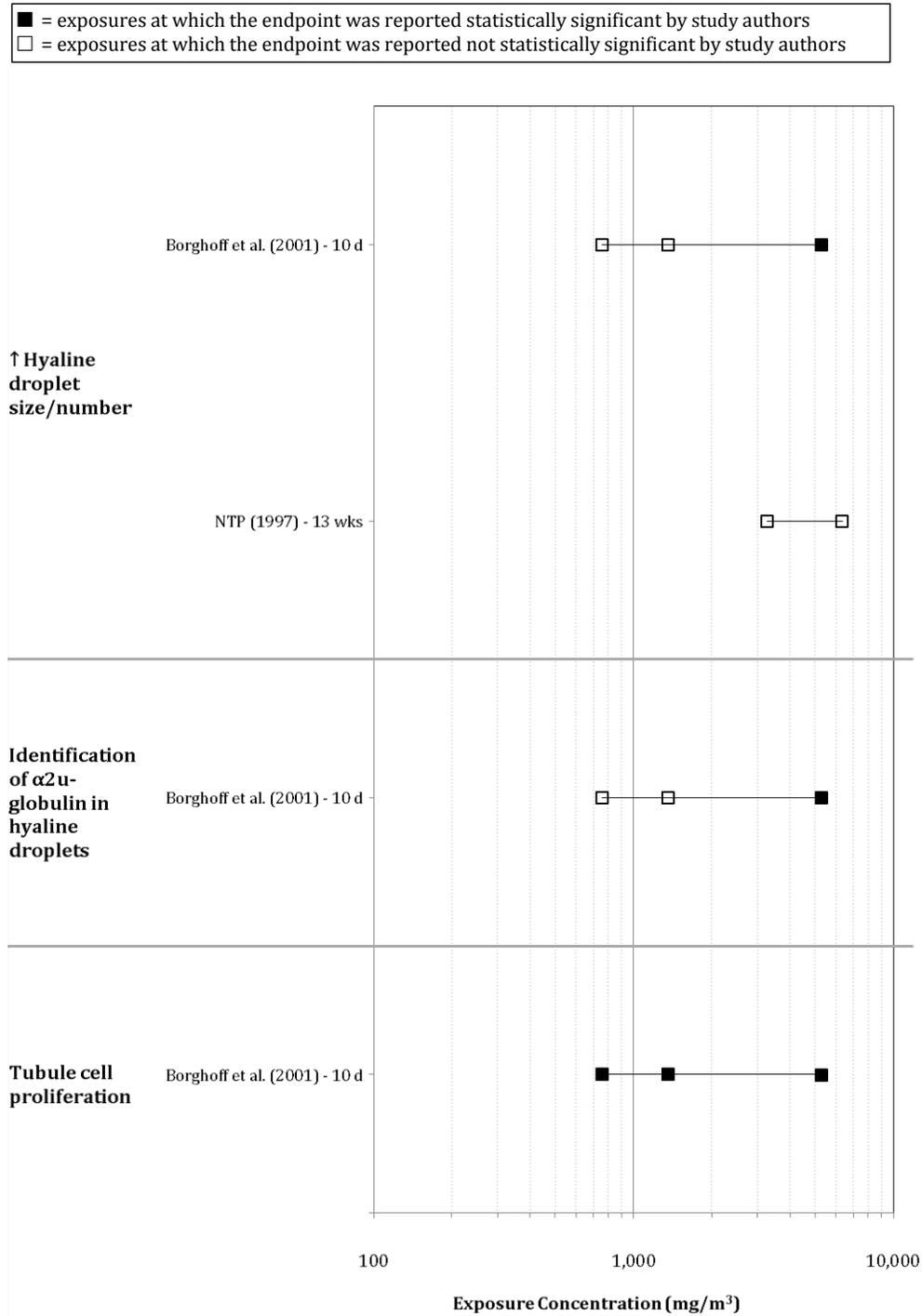
- 1 + = Statistically significant change reported in one or more treated groups.
2 (+) = Effect was reported in one or more treated groups, but statistics not reported.
3 – = No statistically significant change reported in any of the treated groups.
4 ^a[NTP \(1997\)](#) did not observe any effects consistent with α_{2u} -globulin nephropathy.
5 ^bPrecursors to granular casts reported.
6 ^cReanalysis of hematoxylin and eosin-stained kidney sections from all male control and 1,520-mg/kg-d groups and
7 a representative sample of kidney sections stained with Mallory Heidenhain stain, from the 13-wk study from [NTP](#)
8 [\(1995\)](#).
9 ^dReanalysis of slides for all males in the control and 420-mg/kg-d dose groups and all animals with renal tubule
10 tumors from 2-yr [NTP \(1995\)](#). Protein casts reported, not granular casts.



- 1 *[Hard et al. \(2011\)](#) reported presence of "precursor granular casts."
- 2 **[NTP \(1995\)](#) 13-wk study reported kidney mineralization but not linear mineralization.

3 **Figure 1-8. Exposure-response array for effects potentially associated with**
 4 **α_{2u}-globulin renal tubule nephropathy and tumors in male rats after oral**
 5 **exposure to tert-butanol.**

This document is a draft for review purposes only and does not constitute Agency policy.



1 **Figure 1-9. Exposure-response array for effects potentially associated with**
 2 **α_{2u}-globulin renal tubule nephropathy and tumors in male rats after**
 3 **inhalation exposure to *tert*-butanol.**

This document is a draft for review purposes only and does not constitute Agency policy.

1 *Question One: Is the α_{2u} globulin process occurring in male rats exposed to tert-butanol?*

2 (1) The first criterion to consider is whether hyaline droplets are larger and more
3 numerous in male rats. As noted above, the excessive accumulation of hyaline droplets can appear
4 quickly, within 1 or 2 days, and persist throughout chronic exposures, although the severity begins
5 to decline around 5 months ([U.S. EPA, 1991a](#)). A statistically significant positive trend in the
6 accumulation of large protein droplets with crystalloid protein structures was observed in kidneys
7 of male rats exposed to inhalation concentrations of 758, 1,364, and 5,304 mg/m³ *tert*-butanol for 6
8 hr/day for 10 days ([Borghoff et al., 2001](#)). These droplets were small and minimally present in
9 control male rats and were not observed in female rats. Similarly, data from the 13-week NTP oral
10 study ([NTP, 1995](#); [Takahashi et al., 1993](#); [Lindamood et al., 1992](#)) demonstrated an increase in the
11 accumulation of hyaline droplets. The lowest dose, 230 mg/kg-day, had minimal hyaline droplet
12 formation compared to controls, although the next three doses (490, 840, and 1,520 mg/kg-day)
13 had a higher accumulation of droplets with angular, crystalline structures that was similar in
14 incidence and severity among these dose groups. No droplets were observed in female rats or in
15 mice.

16 [NTP \(1997\)](#), however, found no difference between the control and treatment groups
17 stained for hyaline droplet formation in male rats exposed to 0-, 3,273-, or 6,368-mg/m³ *tert*-
18 butanol via inhalation for 13 weeks; in fact, this study reported no other lesions that could be
19 specifically associated with α_{2u} -globulin nephropathy in male rats. These results from [NTP \(1997\)](#),
20 which are inconsistent with the findings of both [Borghoff et al. \(2001\)](#) and [NTP \(1995\)](#), do not
21 appear to be due to differences in dose. Comparison of the oral and inhalation studies on the basis
22 of *tert*-butanol blood concentration (see Supplemental Information) showed that an exposure in the
23 range of the [NTP \(1995\)](#) doses of 490–840 mg/kg-day for 13 weeks leads to the same average
24 blood concentration as inhalation exposures to 3,273–6,368 mg/m³ for 6hr/day, 5 day/week. The
25 absence of similar histopathological findings in the 13-week inhalation [NTP \(1997\)](#) study compared
26 to those reported in the two oral studies is not understood, but might be indicative of the strength
27 of *tert*-butanol to induce, consistently, α_{2u} -globulin nephropathy. The results from the two other
28 studies ([Borghoff et al., 2001](#); [NTP, 1995](#)) indicate that hyaline droplets increase in size and number
29 in male rats following *tert*-butanol exposures. Therefore, the available data are sufficient to fulfill
30 the first criterion that hyaline droplets are increased in size and number in male rats.

31 (2) The second criterion to consider is whether the protein in the hyaline droplets in male
32 rats is α_{2u} -globulin. Accumulated hyaline droplets with an α_{2u} -globulin etiology can be confirmed by
33 using immunohistochemistry to identify the α_{2u} -globulin protein. Two short-term studies measured
34 α_{2u} -globulin immunoreactivity in the hyaline droplets of the renal proximal tubular epithelium
35 ([Borghoff et al., 2001](#); [Williams and Borghoff, 2001](#)). Following 10 days of inhalation exposure,
36 [Borghoff et al. \(2001\)](#) did not observe an exposure-related increase in α_{2u} -globulin using
37 immunohistochemical staining. When using an enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA), a
38 more sensitive method of detecting α_{2u} -globulin, however, a statistically significant positive

1 correlation of α_{2u} -globulin concentration with dose of *tert*-butanol (determined by correlating with
2 cell proliferation labeling indices) was observed, with accumulation of α_{2u} -globulin protein
3 statistically significant by pairwise comparison only in the highest dose group. No positive staining
4 for α_{2u} -globulin was observed in exposed female rats. In a follow-up study, [Williams and Borghoff](#)
5 [\(2001\)](#) used a single gavage dose of 500 mg/kg [selected on the basis of results by [NTP \(1995\)](#) for
6 induction of hyaline droplet accumulation], and reported a statistically significantly higher renal
7 concentration of α_{2u} -globulin (by ELISA) in treated male rats than in controls 12 hours after
8 exposure. Further, equilibrium dialysis methods determined that the binding of *tert*-butanol to
9 α_{2u} -globulin was reversible. These data indicate the presence of α_{2u} -globulin in *tert*-butanol-treated
10 male rats, although requiring a more sensitive method of detection for α_{2u} -globulin than is typically
11 used could indicate that *tert*-butanol is not a strong inducer of α_{2u} -globulin accumulation.
12 Therefore, the available data are sufficient to fulfill the second criterion for α_{2u} -globulin present in
13 the hyaline droplets, but suggest weak induction of α_{2u} -globulin by *tert*-butanol.

14 (3) The third criterion considered is whether several (but not necessarily all) additional
15 events in the histopathological sequence associated with α_{2u} -globulin nephropathy appear in male
16 rats in a manner consistent with the understanding of α_{2u} -globulin pathogenesis. Evidence of
17 cytotoxicity and single-cell necrosis of the tubule epithelium subsequent to the excessive
18 accumulation of hyaline droplets, with exfoliation of degenerate epithelial cells, should be
19 observable after 5 days of continuous exposure, peaking at 19 days [reviewed in [U.S. EPA \(1991a\)](#)].
20 The formation and accumulation of granular casts from the exfoliated cellular debris would follow,
21 causing tubule dilation at the junction of the S3 (P3) segment of the proximal tubule and the
22 descending thin loop of Henle, and the commencement of compensatory cell proliferation within
23 the S2 (P2) segment, both occurring after 3 weeks of continuous exposure. Following chronic
24 exposures, this regenerative proliferation could result in focal tubular hyperplasia, and eventually
25 progress to renal adenoma and carcinoma (Figure 1-7).

26 Several of these steps were observed following *tert*-butanol exposure in male rats, most
27 notably linear papillary mineralization and foci of tubular hyperplasia, consistent with the expected
28 disease progression. Some lack of consistency and dose-related concordance, however, was evident
29 across the remaining steps in the histopathological sequence. First, the accumulation of hyaline
30 droplets and the concentrations of α_{2u} -globulin in the hyaline droplets at doses that induced
31 significant tumor formation in male rats were not significant. Next, necrosis or cytotoxicity was
32 absent, and only precursors to granular casts at stages well within the expected timeframe of
33 detectability were present. Finally, a 13-week inhalation study found no evidence of α_{2u} -globulin
34 nephropathy ([NTP, 1997](#)), despite evaluating exposure concentrations predicted to result in similar
35 blood *tert*-butanol levels as for the 13-week oral study ([NTP, 1995](#)), which reported increases in
36 droplet accumulation and sustained regenerative tubule cell proliferation. A detailed evaluation
37 and analysis of all the evidence relevant to this criterion follows.

1 *Detailed evaluation of the available evidence supporting the third criterion*

- 2 a. Single cell death and exfoliation into the renal tubules might logically be expected to
3 accompany the occurrence of CPN, but this result was inconsistently observed. Single cell
4 death or necrosis was not associated with *tert*-butanol exposure in male rat kidneys after
5 10 or 13 weeks ([Acharya et al., 1997](#); [NTP, 1995](#)). [Acharya et al. \(1997\)](#) reported
6 degeneration of renal tubules, one pathological consequence of single cell necrosis, in male
7 rats exposed to *tert*-butanol in drinking water for 10 weeks. As renal tubule epithelial cell
8 death and epithelial degeneration should occur as early as 5 days post exposure and persist
9 for up to 48 weeks ([Swenberg and Lehman-McKeeman, 1999](#); [Short et al., 1989](#)), the lack of
10 consistency in these observations could be the result of both weak induction of α_{2u} -globulin
11 and a lack of later examinations.
- 12 b. Sustained regenerative cell proliferation also might be logically expected to accompany the
13 occurrence of CPN, but this result, too, was inconsistently observed. [Acharya et al. \(1997\)](#)
14 did not observe *tert*-butanol-induced proliferation following 10 weeks of oral exposure, but
15 renal tubule proliferation was observed following another chemical exposure
16 (trichloroacetic acid) in the same study. Therefore, the inference is that *tert*-butanol
17 treatment did not induce regenerative tubule cell proliferation in male rats from this study.
18 [Borghoff et al. \(2001\)](#), however, reported a dose-related increase in epithelial cell
19 proliferation within the proximal tubule as measured by BrdU (bromodeoxyuridine)
20 labeling indices in all male rats exposed to *tert*-butanol via inhalation for 10 days. The study
21 did not report cytotoxicity and combined with the early time point makes it unlikely that
22 the cell proliferation was compensatory. [NTP \(1995\)](#) also observed increased cell
23 proliferation in the renal tubule epithelium following 13-week oral exposures in male rats
24 [only male rats were studied in the retrospective analysis by [Takahashi et al. \(1993\)](#)
25 reported in [NTP \(1995\)](#)]. Proliferation was elevated at 840–1,520 mg/kg-day, a range
26 higher than the single 575-mg/kg-day dose that elicited epithelial degeneration ([Acharya et
27 al., 1997](#)) which could be consistent with a compensatory proliferative effect. [NTP \(1995\)](#)
28 reported, however, that no necrosis or exfoliation was observed. Altogether, proliferation
29 and necrosis or degeneration were not observed within the same study despite several
30 attempts to measure both effects. Thus, these data provide inadequate evidence to conclude
31 that the proliferation was compensatory.
- 32 c. Granular cast formation was not observed, although one study noted precursors to cast
33 formation. [NTP \(1995\)](#) did not observe the formation of granular casts or tubular dilation;
34 however, [Hard et al. \(2011\)](#) reanalyzed the 13-week oral NTP data from male rats treated
35 with 0 or 1,520 mg/kg-day and identified precursors to granular casts in 5/10 animals in
36 the treated group. The significance of these granular cast precursors, described as sporadic
37 basophilic tubules containing cellular debris, is unknown, because 13 weeks of exposure is
38 within the expected timeframe of frank formation and accumulation of granular casts
39 (≥ 3 weeks). Granular cast formation, however, might not be significantly elevated with
40 weak inducers of α_{2u} -globulin ([Short et al., 1986](#)), which is consistent with the reported
41 difficulty in measuring α_{2u} -globulin in hyaline droplets associated with *tert*-butanol
42 exposure.
- 43 d. Linear mineralization of tubules within the renal papillae was consistently observed in male
44 rats. This lesion typically appears at chronic time points, occurring after exposures of
45 3 months up to 2 years ([U.S. EPA, 1991a](#)). Consistent with this description, 2-year oral

1 exposure to *tert*-butanol induced a dose-related increase in linear mineralization, but not
2 following 13-week exposure [([NTP, 1995](#)); Table 1-2].

- 3 e. Renal tubule hyperplasia was observed in the only available 2-year study. Renal tubule
4 hyperplasia is the preneoplastic lesion associated with α_{2u} -globulin nephropathy in chronic
5 exposures that leads to renal tubule tumors ([U.S. EPA, 1991a](#)). A dose-related increase in
6 renal tubule hyperplasia was observed in male rats following 2-year oral exposures ([NTP,](#)
7 [1995](#)). By comparison, renal tubule hyperplasia was observed in only one high-dose female.

8 The progression of histopathological lesions for α_{2u} -globulin nephropathy is predicated on
9 the initial response of excessive hyaline droplet accumulation (containing α_{2u} -globulin) leading to
10 cell necrosis and cytotoxicity, which in turn cause the accumulation of granular casts, linear
11 mineralization, and tubular hyperplasia. Therefore, observations of temporal and dose-response
12 concordance for these effects are informative for drawing conclusions on causation.

13 As mentioned above, most steps in the sequence of α_{2u} -globulin nephropathy are observed
14 at the expected time points following exposure to *tert*-butanol. Accumulation of hyaline droplets
15 was observed early, at 12 hours following a single bolus exposure ([Williams and Borghoff, 2001](#))
16 and at 10 days ([Borghoff et al., 2001](#)) or 13 weeks ([NTP, 1995](#)) following continuous exposure;
17 α_{2u} -globulin was identified as the protein in these droplets ([Borghoff et al., 2001](#); [Williams and](#)
18 [Borghoff, 2001](#)). Lack of necrosis and exfoliation might be due to the weak induction of α_{2u} -globulin
19 and a lack of later examinations. Granular cast formation was not reported in any of the available
20 studies, which could also indicate weak α_{2u} -globulin induction. Regenerative cell proliferation,
21 which was not observed, is discussed in more detail below. Observations of the subsequent linear
22 mineralization of tubules and focal tubular hyperplasia fall within the expected timeframe of the
23 appearance of these lesions. Overall, no explicit inconsistencies are present in the temporal
24 appearance of the histopathological lesions associated with α_{2u} -globulin nephropathy; however, the
25 dataset would be bolstered by measurements at additional time points to lend strength to the MOA
26 evaluation.

27 Inconsistencies do occur in the dose-response among lesions associated with the
28 α_{2u} -globulin nephropathy progression. Hyaline droplets were induced in the proximal tubule of all
29 surviving male rats in the 13-week NTP oral study ([NTP, 1995](#); [Takahashi et al., 1993](#); [Lindamood](#)
30 [et al., 1992](#)), although the incidence at the lowest dose was minimal, while the incidence at the
31 three higher doses was more prominent. These results are discordant with the tumor results, given
32 that all treated groups of male rats in the NTP 2-year oral bioassay had increased kidney tumor
33 incidence, including the lowest dose of 90 mg/kg-day [according to the reanalysis by [Hard et al.](#)
34 [\(2011\)](#)]. This lowest dose was less than the 230 mg/kg-day in the 13-week oral study that had only
35 minimal hyaline droplet formation. Furthermore, although the incidence of renal tubule
36 hyperplasia had a dose-related increase ([NTP, 1995](#)), a corresponding dose-related increase in the
37 severity of tubular hyperplasia did not result. Severity of tubule hyperplasia was increased only at
38 the highest dose, which was not consistent with renal tumor incidence.

1 Although the histopathological sequence has data gaps, such as the lack of observable
2 necrosis or cytotoxicity or granular casts at stages within the timeframe of detectability, overall, a
3 sufficient number of steps (e.g., linear papillary mineralization, foci of tubular hyperplasia) were
4 observed to fulfill the third criterion.

5 *Summary and Conclusions for Question One:*

6 Oral exposure to male F344 rats resulted in an increased incidence of renal tubule tumors in
7 a 2-year oral bioassay ([Hard et al., 2011](#); [NTP, 1995](#)). Several histopathological observations in
8 exposed male rats were consistent with an α_{2u} -globulin MOA. This evidence includes the increased
9 size and number of hyaline droplets and the accumulated α_{2u} -globulin protein in the hyaline
10 droplets. Additionally, several subsequent steps in the histopathological sequence were observed.
11 Overall, available data are sufficient for all three required criteria, suggesting that the α_{2u} -globulin
12 process is operative. Although the evidence indicates a role for α_{2u} -globulin accumulation in the
13 etiology of kidney tumors induced by exposure to *tert*-butanol in male rats, that *tert*-butanol is a
14 weak inducer of α_{2u} -globulin is plausible, considering the available histopathological observations
15 and uncertainty regarding the temporal and dose concordance of the lesions.

16 *Question Two: Are the renal effects in male rats exposed to tert-butanol due solely to the α_{2u} -globulin*
17 *process?*

18 If the α_{2u} -globulin process is operative, [U.S. EPA \(1991a\)](#) identifies a second question that
19 must be answered regarding whether the renal effects are solely due to the α_{2u} -globulin process, a
20 combination of the α_{2u} -globulin process and other carcinogenic processes, or primarily due to other
21 processes. [U.S. EPA \(1991a\)](#) states that additional data can help inform whether the α_{2u} -globulin
22 process is the sole contributor to renal tubule tumor development in male rats. These additional
23 data are considered and discussed in detail below.

24 (a) *Hypothesis-testing of the α_{2u} -globulin sequence of effects and structure-activity*
25 *relationships that might suggest the chemical belongs in a different class of suspected carcinogens:* No
26 data are available to evaluate these considerations.

27 (b) *Biochemical information regarding binding of the chemical to the α_{2u} -globulin protein:*
28 [Williams and Borghoff \(2001\)](#) report that *tert*-butanol reversibly and noncovalently binds to
29 α_{2u} -globulin in the kidneys of male rats. This provides additional support to the involvement of the
30 α_{2u} -globulin process.

31 Presence of sustained cell replication in the S2 (P2) segment of the renal tubule at doses
32 used in the cancer bioassay and a dose-related increase in hyperplasia of the renal tubule:
33 Sustained cell division in the proximal tubule of the male rat is consistent with, although not
34 specific to, the α_{2u} -globulin process. Cell proliferation was observed in two studies [13-week, [NTP](#)
35 [\(1995\)](#) and 10-day, [Borghoff et al. \(2001\)](#)] but whether the proliferation was compensatory is
36 unknown, as cytotoxicity was not observed in these studies. Although the data do not support
37 sustained occurrence of cell division subsequent to cytotoxic cell death, renal tubule hyperplasia in

1 male rats was reported after 2 years of exposure ([NTP, 1995](#)). Thus, although some evidence of
2 sustained cell replication is available, it does not specifically support α_{2u} -globulin protein
3 accumulation.

4 *(c) Covalent binding to DNA or other macromolecules, suggesting another process leading to*
5 *tumors and genotoxicity (α_{2u} -globulin-inducers are essentially nongenotoxic):* One study ([Yuan et al.](#)
6 [2007](#)) observed a dose-related increase in *tert*-butanol-DNA adducts in liver, kidney, and lung of
7 mice administered a single low dose of *tert*-butanol (≤ 1 mg/kg) in saline via gavage (see Appendix
8 B.3 in Supplemental Information for further details). An extremely sensitive method of detection
9 was used (accelerator mass spectrometry), but the DNA adduct species were not identified, and no
10 validation of these results has been identified in the literature. The few studies available to assess
11 the genotoxic potential of *tert*-butanol primarily are negative, although a few studies report DNA
12 damage induced by oxidative stress. DNA damage induced by oxidative stress is consistent with the
13 decreased levels of glutathione in male rat kidneys reported by [Acharya et al. \(1995\)](#) after 10 weeks
14 of *tert*-butanol exposure. This type of genetic damage would not necessarily preclude a role for
15 α_{2u} -globulin, but not enough information is available to determine whether oxidative stress could
16 initiate or promote kidney tumors in concert with α_{2u} -globulin accumulation in male rat kidneys.

17 *(d) Nephrotoxicity in the male rat not associated with the α_{2u} -globulin process or CPN,*
18 *suggesting the possibility of other processes leading to renal tubule nephrotoxicity and*
19 *carcinogenicity:* Nephropathy reported in the 13-week oral and inhalation and 2-year oral studies
20 was considered CPN and these effects were exacerbated by treatment with *tert*-butanol. At 13
21 weeks ([NTP, 1997, 1995](#)) and 2 years ([NTP, 1995](#)), oral and inhalation exposure increased the
22 severity of nephropathy in male rats ([NTP, 1995](#)). Similarly, the severity of nephropathy was
23 increased in females at 2 years, but only the incidence of nephropathy was increased in females
24 following a 13-week oral exposure ([NTP, 1995](#)).

25 Increased incidences of suppurative inflammation and kidney transitional epithelial
26 hyperplasia were observed in female rats orally exposed to *tert*-butanol for 2 years. [NTP \(1995\)](#)
27 and [Frazier et al. \(2012\)](#) characterized these endpoints as associated with CPN, and an analysis of
28 the individual animals indicates these endpoints are moderately correlated with CPN. At 2 years,
29 the male rats also exhibited a dose-related increase in transitional epithelial hyperplasia, and the
30 correlation of this endpoint with CPN was stronger than in female rats.

31 Kidney weights were increased in male and female rats in the 13-week oral and inhalation
32 evaluations ([NTP, 1997, 1995](#)) and 15-month oral evaluation ([NTP, 1995](#)). The dose-related
33 increases observed in both male and female rats suggest that the kidney weight changes are
34 indicative of treatment-related molecular processes primarily unrelated to α_{2u} -globulin protein
35 accumulation. Given that CPN also was increased at these time points, however, the influence of
36 CPN on kidney weights cannot be ruled out.

37 Overall, the nephrotoxicity observed in the male rat is difficult to disentangle from CPN and
38 α_{2u} -globulin processes. The moderate correlation (Spearman's rank coefficient = 0.45) between CPN

1 severity and renal tumor incidence in male rats and the very weak correlation (Spearman's rank
2 coefficient = 0.16) between renal tubule hyperplasia and renal tumors (Table 1-8) suggests that
3 α_{2u} -globulin nephropathy is not solely responsible for the renal tumors. Furthermore, considering
4 that the treatment-related exacerbation of CPN severity in female rats occurs without the
5 subsequent induction of renal tumors, this suggests that other processes besides α_{2u} -globulin and
6 CPN in males might be responsible for the renal tubule tumors.

7 *Summary and Conclusions for Question Two:*

8 Although the evidence suggests that *tert*-butanol induces α_{2u} -globulin nephropathy, the data
9 indicate that *tert*-butanol is a weak inducer of α_{2u} -globulin and that this process is not solely
10 responsible for the renal tubule nephropathy and carcinogenicity observed in male rats. The lack of
11 compensatory cell proliferation in male rats and evidence of nephrotoxicity in female rats suggest
12 that other processes, in addition to the α_{2u} -globulin process, are operating. Furthermore, the
13 accumulation of hyaline droplets and the induction of renal tubule hyperplasia were affected at
14 higher doses compared to those inducing renal tubule tumors. Collectively, these data suggest that
15 *tert*-butanol induces the α_{2u} -globulin pathway at high doses (>420 mg/kg-day), which results in
16 tumor formation. Other, unknown pathways, however, could be operative at lower doses
17 (<420 mg/kg-day), which contribute to renal tumor induction.

18 b) Chronic Progressive Nephropathy and Renal Carcinogenicity

19 Scientists disagree about the extent to which CPN can be characterized as a carcinogenic
20 MOA suitable for analysis under the EPA's cancer guidelines. Proponents of CPN as an MOA have
21 developed an evolving series of empirical criteria for attributing renal tubule tumors to CPN. [Hard
22 and Khan \(2004\)](#) proposed criteria for concluding that a chemical is associated with renal tubule
23 tumors through an interaction with CPN. [Hard et al. \(2013\)](#) slightly revised and restated their
24 criteria for considering exacerbation of CPN as an MOA for renal tubule tumors in rats. Table 1-10
25 lists these sets of proposed empirical criteria for attributing renal tubule tumors to CPN.

1 **Table 1-10. Proposed empirical criteria for attributing renal tumors to CPN**

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • First and foremost, the chemical must have been shown to exacerbate CPN to very advanced stages of severity, especially end-stage kidney disease, in comparison to control rats in a 2-year carcinogenicity study. • The tumors should occur in very low incidence and, for the most part, be minimal-grade lesions conforming to small adenomas or lesions borderline between atypical tubule hyperplasia (ATH) and adenoma. • Such tumors should be associated only with the highest grades of CPN severity. • The tumors and any precursor foci of ATH must be restricted to CPN-affected parenchyma and are usually observed only toward the end of the 2-year studies. • Careful microscopic examination of renal parenchyma not involved in the CPN process should reveal no evidence of compound-induced cellular injury or other changes that would suggest alternative modes of action. <p>Source: Hard and Khan (2004)</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Genotoxic activity based on overall evaluation of in vitro and in vivo data is absent. • Tumor incidence is low, usually <10%. • Tumors are found toward the end of 2-year studies. • Lesions are usually ATH or adenomas (carcinomas occasionally can occur). • Chemical exacerbates CPN to most advanced stages, including end-stage kidney disease. • ATH and tumors occur in rats with advanced CPN and in CPN-affected tissue. • Cytotoxicity in CPN-unaffected tubules, in rats with lower grades of CPN, and in subchronic studies is absent. <p>Source: Hard et al. (2013)</p>
----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

2 [Hard et al. \(2013\)](#) maintain that knowing the detailed etiology or underlying mechanism for
3 CPN is unnecessary. Instead, identifying increased CPN with its associated increase in tubule cell
4 proliferation as the key event is adequate. Nonetheless, [Hard et al. \(2013\)](#) also postulated a
5 sequence of key events for renal tumorigenesis involving exacerbation of CPN:

- Exposure to chemical (usually at high concentrations);
- Metabolic activation (if necessary);
- Exacerbated CPN, including increased number of rats with end-stage renal disease;
- Increased tubule cell proliferation because more kidney is damaged due to CPN exacerbation;
- Hyperplasia; and
- Adenoma (infrequently carcinoma).

6 In contrast to these proposed criteria and this MOA, [Melnick et al. \(2013\)](#); [Melnick et al.](#)
7 [\(2012\)](#) concluded, based on an analysis of 60 NTP studies, no consistent association exists between
8 exacerbated CPN and the incidence of renal tubule tumors in rats. Without a consistent association

This document is a draft for review purposes only and does not constitute Agency policy.

1 and an understanding of its key events, they maintain that determining the human relevance of
2 processes that might be occurring in rats is not possible. An earlier analysis of 28 NTP studies
3 ([Seely et al., 2002](#)) found a slight but statistically significant increase in CPN severity in animals
4 with renal tubule tumors, without determining that this relationship is causal. They suggested that
5 the number of tumors due to chemically exacerbated CPN would be few.

6 *Evaluation of the MOA Proposed by [Hard et al. \(2013\)](#)*

7 Setting aside the question of whether CPN is ([Hard et al., 2013](#); [Hard and Khan, 2004](#)) or is
8 not ([Melnick et al., 2013](#); [Melnick et al., 2012](#)) an MOA suitable for analysis, this section provides an
9 analysis of the mechanistic data pertinent to CPN. EPA's cancer guidelines ([U.S. EPA, 2005a](#)) define
10 a framework for judging whether available data support a hypothesized MOA; the analysis in this
11 section follows the structure presented in the cancer guidelines.

12 *Description of the hypothesized MOA.* Under the EPA framework, toxicokinetic studies are
13 important for identifying the active agent, but toxicokinetic events per se are not key events of an
14 MOA. Thus, the EPA analysis of the MOA proposed by [Hard et al. \(2013\)](#) begins with
15 (1) exacerbated CPN, including increased number of rats with end-stage renal disease, and
16 proceeds via (2) increased tubule cell proliferation, (3) hyperplasia, and (4) adenoma, or
17 infrequently, carcinoma.

18 *Strength, consistency, specificity of association.* The relationship between exacerbated CPN
19 and renal tumors is moderate in male rats in the [NTP \(1995\)](#) study. According to the [NTP \(1995\)](#)
20 analysis, the mean CPN grades (same as "severity of nephropathy" reported by NTP) presented on a
21 scale 1–4 for male rats with renal tumors were 3.5, 3.6, 3.7, and 3.4 at doses 0, 1.25, 2.5, and 5
22 mg/mL. The mean CPN grades for male rats without renal tumors were 2.9, 2.8, 2.8, and 3.2 for the
23 same dose groups. The reanalysis of the NTP data by [Hard et al. \(2011\)](#) yielded similar numbers.
24 Analysis of the individual occurrence of CPN and renal tumors demonstrated a moderately positive
25 correlation (Spearman's rank coefficient $r_s = 0.43$) (Table 1-8). The relationship between CPN and
26 renal tumors, however, is neither consistent nor specific in the [NTP \(1995\)](#) study: No female rats
27 developed renal tumors regardless of the presence of relatively low-grade or relatively high-grade
28 CPN. For example, in female rats surviving more than 700 days, the mean CPN grades were 1.7 and
29 3.2 at doses of 0 and 10 mg/mL, respectively, but no tumors developed in either group.

30 *Dose-response concordance.* The dose-response relationships for CPN, renal tubule
31 hyperplasia, and renal tubule tumors somewhat differ. According to the [NTP \(1995\)](#) analysis, at
32 doses of 0, 1.25, 2.5, and 5 mg/mL, the mean CPN grades for all male rats were 3.0, 3.1, 3.1, and 3.3;
33 the incidences of renal tubule hyperplasia (standard and extended evaluation combined) were
34 14/50, 20/50, 17/50, and 25/50; and the incidences of renal tubule adenomas or carcinomas were
35 8/50, 13/50, 19/50, and 13/50 (Table 1-3). The reanalysis by [Hard et al. \(2011\)](#) reported similar
36 tumor incidences (4/50, 13/50, 18/50, and 12/50), except that four fewer rats in the controls and
37 one fewer rat in the group exposed to 2.5 mg/mL had tumors. The lower control incidence
38 observed in this reanalysis accentuates the differences in these dose-response relationships. For

1 example, the maximal tumor response (4/50 in controls versus 18/50 at the middle dose) does not
2 parallel the marginal change in CPN severity (i.e., group average of 3.0 to 3.1). That a marginal
3 increase in CPN severity would be associated with significant tumor induction seems inconsistent.
4 Furthermore, CPN severity is nearly as great in the female rats, yet no females developed tumors, as
5 noted above.

6 *Temporal relationship.* The severity of CPN progressed over time. According to the [NTP](#)
7 [\(1995\)](#) analysis, the mean CPN grades in the 13-week study of male rats were 1.0, 1.6, 2.6, 2.7, 2.6,
8 and 1.1 at doses of 0, 2.5, 5, 10, 20, and 40 mg/mL. At the 15-month interim evaluation of the 2-year
9 study, the mean CPN grades were 2.4, 2.8, 2.7, and 2.6 at doses of 0, 1.25, 2.5, and 5 mg/mL and, at
10 2 years, increased to 3.0, 3.1, 3.1, and 3.3. Similarly, the severity of neoplastic lesions increased at
11 the end of life. At the 15-month interim evaluation, only two rats had developed renal tubule
12 hyperplasia and one other had a renal tubule adenoma; at 2 years, the incidences of these two
13 lesions were much higher in all dose groups (see previous paragraph). These results are consistent
14 with CPN as an age-related disease and with hyperplasia and tumors appearing near the end of life.

15 *Biological plausibility and coherence.* In general, the relationship between exacerbated CPN
16 and renal tubule tumors in male rats appears plausible and coherent. Some patterns in the dose-
17 response relationships for CPN, hyperplasia, and tumors are discrepant. Perhaps more importantly,
18 the patterns also are discrepant for the relationships between CPN grades and renal tubule tumors
19 in female rats. In addition, the increased incidences in renal tubule tumors in all exposed male rats
20 exceed the 10% criterion proposed by [Hard et al. \(2013\)](#) (Table 1-10), even more so when making
21 comparisons with the lower control tumor incidence from the [Hard et al. \(2011\)](#) reanalysis.

22 *Conclusions about the hypothesized CPN-related MOA*

23 As recommended by EPA's cancer guidelines ([U.S. EPA, 2005a](#)), conclusions about the
24 hypothesized MOA can be clarified by answering three questions presented below.

25 (a) *Is the hypothesized MOA sufficiently supported in the test animals?* Exacerbated CPN
26 leading to renal tubule tumors in male rats late in life appears to have some support. Consistency is
27 lacking, however, between males and females and in the dose-response relationships between CPN,
28 hyperplasia, and adenomas. These inconsistencies make difficult attributing all renal tumors to
29 either CPN or to α_{2u} -globulin-related nephropathy (see previous section on α_{2u} -globulin), raising
30 the likelihood of another, yet unspecified MOA.

31 (b) *Is the hypothesized MOA relevant to humans?* CPN is a common and well-established
32 constellation of age-related lesions in the kidney of rats, and no counterpart to CPN in aging
33 humans is known. Scientists disagree, however, on the relevancy of the CPN MOA to humans. [Hard](#)
34 [et al. \(2013\)](#); [Hard et al. \(2009\)](#) cite several differences in pathology between rat CPN and human
35 nephropathies in their arguments that CPN-related renal tumors in rats are not relevant to humans.
36 On the other hand, [Melnick et al. \(2013\)](#); [Melnick et al. \(2012\)](#) argue that the etiology of CPN and
37 the mechanisms for its exacerbation by chemicals are unknown and fail to meet fundamental
38 principles for defining an MOA and for evaluating human relevance. This issue is unresolved.

This document is a draft for review purposes only and does not constitute Agency policy.

1 (c) Which populations or lifestyles can be particularly susceptible to the hypothesized MOA?

2 That human populations or lifestyles are especially susceptible to tumors induced through
3 exacerbated CPN is not indicated.

4 In summary, the renal tubule tumors are partially attributed to CPN in male rats and not in
5 female rats, considering discrepant patterns in the dose-response relationships for CPN,
6 hyperplasia, and renal tubule tumors; the moderately strong correlation between CPN grades and
7 renal tubule tumors in male rats; and the lack of relationships between CPN severity and renal
8 tumors in female rats together with the lack of a generally accepted MOA for CPN.

9 This position can be reconciled with that of [Melnick et al. \(2013\)](#); [Melnick et al. \(2012\)](#), who
10 argued against dismissing renal tubule tumors in rats that can be related to exacerbated CPN. It also
11 can be reconciled with [Hard et al. \(2013\)](#), who, while maintaining these tumors are not relevant to
12 humans, also allow there is no generally accepted MOA for CPN akin to that for α_{2u} -globulin-related
13 nephropathy. [Hard et al. \(2013\)](#) made this statement after reporting on the collective experience of
14 national and international health agencies worldwide with the use of CPN as an MOA. Of 21
15 substances that exacerbated CPN and caused renal tumors, most were multisite carcinogens, and
16 other tumor sites contributed to the evaluations. Only two assessments explicitly considered CPN
17 as a renal tumor mechanism. One was the assessment of ethylbenzene by the German Federal
18 Institute for Occupational Safety and Health, in which the agency concluded that the kidney tumors
19 were associated with the high, strain-specific incidence of CPN that is unknown for humans [as
20 discussed in [Hard et al. \(2013\)](#)]. The other was the IRIS assessment of tetrahydrofuran, for which
21 EPA found the evidence insufficient to conclude that the kidney tumors are mediated solely by the
22 hypothesized MOAs ([U.S. EPA, 2012d](#)). [Hard et al. \(2013\)](#) attributed these different conclusions to
23 either different data for the two chemicals or the lack of a generally accepted MOA akin to
24 α_{2u} -globulin-related nephropathy.

25 Relevant to this last point, [IARC \(1999\)](#) developed a consensus statement that listed
26 considerations for evaluating α_{2u} -globulin-related nephropathy in rats, which was based on the
27 work of 22 scientists, including 3 who were co-authors of [Hard et al. \(2013\)](#) and 2 who were co-
28 authors of [Melnick et al. \(2013\)](#); [Melnick et al. \(2012\)](#). A similar broad-based consensus that defines
29 a sequence of key events for exacerbated CPN, distinguishes it more clearly from α_{2u} -globulin-
30 related nephropathy, and evaluates its relevance to humans would be helpful in advancing the
31 understanding of these issues.

32 **Overall Conclusions on MOA for Kidney Effects**

33 *tert*-Butanol increases α_{2u} -globulin deposition and hyaline droplet accumulation in male rat
34 kidneys and several of the subsequent steps in that pathological sequence. These data provide
35 sufficient evidence (albeit minimal) that the α_{2u} -globulin process is operating, although based on
36 further analysis this chemical appears to be a weak inducer of α_{2u} -globulin nephropathy and this
37 induction is not the sole contributor to renal tubule nephropathy and carcinogenicity. CPN and the
38 exacerbation of CPN (likely due to both α_{2u} -globulin and *tert*-butanol) play a role in renal tubule

This document is a draft for review purposes only and does not constitute Agency policy.

1 nephropathy. The available evidence indicates that CPN might be involved in the induction of renal
2 tubule tumors in male rats, likely by providing proliferative stimulus in the form of compensatory
3 regeneration following toxicity to the renal tubule epithelium, although these effects were not
4 observed in some studies. Additionally, several endpoints in female rats indicate that renal tubule
5 nephrotoxicity and increased kidney weights related to *tert*-butanol exposure cannot be explained
6 by the α_{2u} -globulin process.

7 ***Integration of Kidney Effects***

8 Kidney effects (increases in nephropathy, severity of nephropathy, hyaline droplets, linear
9 mineralization, suppurative inflammation, transitional epithelial hyperplasia, mineralization, and
10 kidney weight) were observed, predominantly in male and female rats across the multiple *tert*-
11 butanol studies. The available evidence indicates that multiple processes induce the noncancer
12 kidney effects. The group of lesions generally reported as “nephropathy,” is related to CPN. CPN is a
13 common and well-established constellation of age-related lesions in the kidney of rats, for which no
14 known counterpart to CPN exists in aging humans. CPN is not, inherently, a specific diagnosis,
15 however, but an aggregate term describing a spectrum of effects. The individual lesions associated
16 with CPN (tubular degeneration, glomerular sclerosis, etc.) also occur in the human kidney. Thus,
17 exacerbation of one or more of these lesions might reflect a type of injury relevant to the human
18 kidney.

19 Additionally, two endpoints in male rats (hyaline droplets, linear mineralization) are
20 components of the α_{2u} -globulin process. [U.S. EPA \(1991a\)](#) states that if the α_{2u} -globulin process
21 were occurring in male rats, the renal tubule effects associated with this process in male rats would
22 not be relevant to humans for purposes of hazard identification. In cases such as these, the
23 characterization of human health hazard for noncancer kidney toxicity would rely on effects not
24 specifically associated with the α_{2u} -globulin process in male rats.

25 Because female rats are not affected by α_{2u} -globulin nephropathy, lesions associated with
26 CPN in female rats are used for human hazard characterization. Several other noncancer endpoints
27 resulted from *tert*-butanol exposure and are appropriate for consideration of a kidney hazard,
28 specifically: suppurative inflammation in female rats, transitional epithelial hyperplasia in female
29 rats, severity of nephropathy in female rats, incidence of nephropathy in female rats, and increased
30 kidney weights in rats but not mice. Based on dose-related increases in these noncancer endpoints
31 in rats, kidney effects are a potential human hazard of *tert*-butanol exposure. The hazard and dose-
32 response conclusions regarding these noncancer endpoints associated with *tert*-butanol exposure
33 are discussed further in Section 1.3.1.

34 The carcinogenic effects observed following *tert*-butanol exposure include increased
35 incidences of renal tubule hyperplasia (considered a preneoplastic effect) and tumors in male rats.
36 EPA concluded that the three criteria were met to indicate that an α_{2u} -globulin process is operating.
37 Because renal tubule tumors in male rats did not arise solely due to the α_{2u} -globulin and CPN
38 processes and some of the tumors are attributable to other carcinogenic processes, such tumors

1 remain relevant for purposes of hazard identification ([U.S. EPA, 1991a](#)).⁹ The hazard and dose-
2 response conclusions regarding the renal tubule hyperplasia and tumors associated with *tert*-
3 butanol exposure are further discussed as part of the overall weight of evidence for carcinogenicity
4 in Section 1.3.2.

5 **1.2.2 Thyroid Effects**

6 ***Synthesis of Effects in Thyroid***

7 The database on thyroid effects following *tert*-butanol exposure contains no human data,
8 two oral subchronic and two oral chronic studies (one of each duration in rats and in mice) ([NTP,](#)
9 [1995](#)), and two inhalation subchronic studies (one in rats and one in mice) ([NTP, 1997](#)). Studies
10 employing short-term and acute exposures that examined thyroid effects are not included in the
11 evidence table; they are discussed, however, in the text if they provide data informative of MOA or
12 hazard identification. No gross thyroid effects were reported in the 13-week evaluations of mice or
13 rats following oral or inhalation exposure ([NTP, 1997, 1995](#)), and therefore subchronic studies
14 were not included in the evidence table. The two available chronic studies are arranged in the
15 evidence table by effect and then by species. The design, conduct, and reporting of each study were
16 reviewed, and each study was considered adequate to provide information pertinent to this
17 assessment (Figure 1-10).

18 Thyroid effects, specifically follicular cell hyperplasia and adenomas, were observed in mice
19 of both sexes after 2 years of oral exposure via drinking water ([NTP, 1995](#)). [NTP \(1995\)](#) noted,
20 “[p]roliferation of thyroid gland follicular cells is generally considered to follow a progression from
21 hyperplasia to adenoma and carcinoma.” Both male and female mice exhibited a dose-related
22 increase in the incidence of hyperplasia, and the average severity across all dose groups was
23 minimal to mild with scores ranging from 1.2 to 2.2 (out of 4). Increased incidence of adenomas
24 also was observed in the *tert*-butanol-treated mice, with the only carcinoma observed in high-dose
25 males. No treatment-related thyroid effects were reported in rats of either sex following 2 years of
26 oral exposure ([NTP, 1995](#)).

27 The tumor response in male mice, adjusted for early mortality, showed a statistically
28 significant increasing trend (Cochran-Armitage trend test, $p = 0.041$; analysis performed by EPA).
29 Although the response appeared nonmonotonic, with a slightly lower response at the high-dose

⁹When the α_{2u} -globulin process is occurring, [U.S. EPA \(1991a\)](#) states that one of the following conclusions will be made: (a) if renal tumors in male rats are attributable solely to the α_{2u} -globulin process, such tumors will not be used for human cancer hazard identification or for dose-response extrapolations; (b) if renal tumors in male rats are not linked to the α_{2u} -globulin process, such tumors are an appropriate endpoint for human hazard identification and are considered, along with other appropriate endpoints, for quantitative risk estimation; or (c) if some renal tumors in male rats are attributable to the α_{2u} -globulin process and some are attributable to other carcinogenic processes, such tumors remain relevant for purposes of hazard identification, but a dose-response estimate based on such tumors in male rats should not be performed unless enough information is available to determine the relative contribution of each process to the overall renal tumor response.

1 level than at the mid-dose level, the increased mortality reported in the high-dose group occurred
 2 before tumors appeared; about 40% of the high-dose males died before the first tumor (a
 3 carcinoma) appeared in this group at week 83. By comparison, only ~10% of the control group had
 4 died by this time, and the single tumor in the control group was observed at study termination.
 5 Mortality in the exposed female mice was similar to controls.

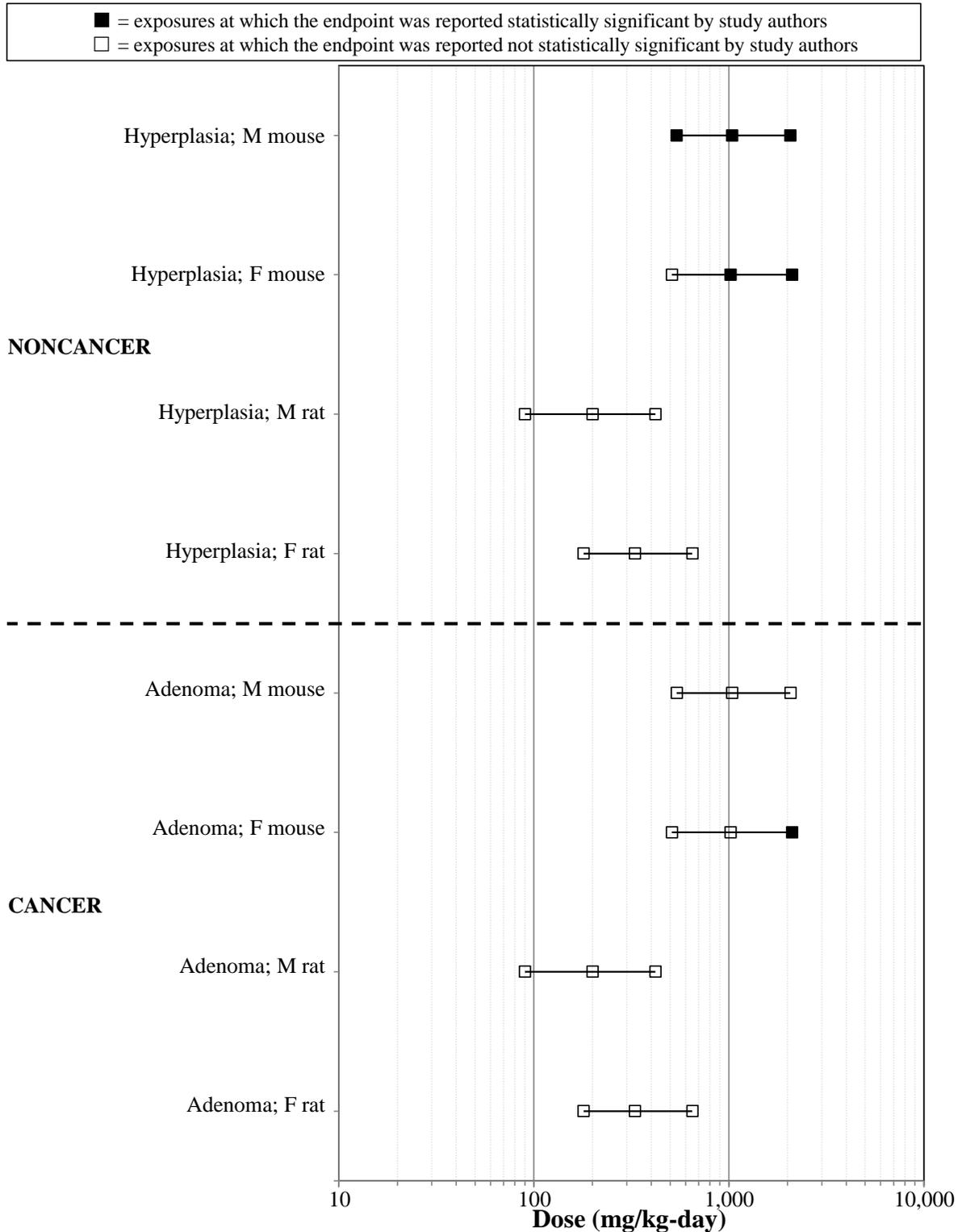
6 **Table 1-11. Evidence pertaining to thyroid effects in animals following oral**
 7 **exposure to *tert*-butanol**

Reference and study design	Results																											
<i>Follicular cell hyperplasia</i>																												
NTP (1995) F344/N rat; 60/sex/treatment (10/sex/treatment evaluated at 15 months) Drinking water (0, 1.25, 2.5, 5, or 10 mg/mL) M: 0, 90, 200, or 420 ^a mg/kg-d F: 0, 180, 330, or 650 ^a mg/kg-d 2 years	Incidence ^b <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th colspan="2">Males</th> <th colspan="2">Females</th> </tr> <tr> <th><u>Dose</u> <u>(mg/kg-d)</u></th> <th><u>Follicular cell</u> <u>hyperplasia</u></th> <th><u>Dose</u> <u>(mg/kg-d)</u></th> <th><u>Follicular cell</u> <u>hyperplasia</u></th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>3/50</td> <td>0</td> <td>0/50</td> </tr> <tr> <td>90</td> <td>0/49</td> <td>180</td> <td>0/50</td> </tr> <tr> <td>200</td> <td>0/50</td> <td>330</td> <td>0/50</td> </tr> <tr> <td>420^a</td> <td>0/50</td> <td>650^a</td> <td>0/50</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>				Males		Females		<u>Dose</u> <u>(mg/kg-d)</u>	<u>Follicular cell</u> <u>hyperplasia</u>	<u>Dose</u> <u>(mg/kg-d)</u>	<u>Follicular cell</u> <u>hyperplasia</u>	0	3/50	0	0/50	90	0/49	180	0/50	200	0/50	330	0/50	420 ^a	0/50	650 ^a	0/50
Males		Females																										
<u>Dose</u> <u>(mg/kg-d)</u>	<u>Follicular cell</u> <u>hyperplasia</u>	<u>Dose</u> <u>(mg/kg-d)</u>	<u>Follicular cell</u> <u>hyperplasia</u>																									
0	3/50	0	0/50																									
90	0/49	180	0/50																									
200	0/50	330	0/50																									
420 ^a	0/50	650 ^a	0/50																									
NTP (1995) B6C3F ₁ mouse; 60/sex/treatment Drinking water (0, 5, 10, or 20 mg/mL) M: 0, 540, 1,040, or 2,070 ^a mg/kg-d F: 0, 510, 1,020, or 2,110 mg/kg-d 2 years	Incidence (severity) <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th colspan="2">Males</th> <th colspan="2">Females</th> </tr> <tr> <th><u>Dose</u> <u>(mg/kg-d)</u></th> <th><u>Follicular cell</u> <u>hyperplasia</u></th> <th><u>Dose</u> <u>(mg/kg-d)</u></th> <th><u>Follicular cell</u> <u>hyperplasia</u></th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>5/60 (1.2)</td> <td>0</td> <td>19/58 (1.8)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>540</td> <td>18/59* (1.6)</td> <td>510</td> <td>28/60 (1.9)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1,040</td> <td>15/59* (1.4)</td> <td>1,020</td> <td>33/59* (1.7)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2,070^a</td> <td>18/57* (2.1)</td> <td>2,110</td> <td>47/59* (2.2)</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>				Males		Females		<u>Dose</u> <u>(mg/kg-d)</u>	<u>Follicular cell</u> <u>hyperplasia</u>	<u>Dose</u> <u>(mg/kg-d)</u>	<u>Follicular cell</u> <u>hyperplasia</u>	0	5/60 (1.2)	0	19/58 (1.8)	540	18/59* (1.6)	510	28/60 (1.9)	1,040	15/59* (1.4)	1,020	33/59* (1.7)	2,070 ^a	18/57* (2.1)	2,110	47/59* (2.2)
Males		Females																										
<u>Dose</u> <u>(mg/kg-d)</u>	<u>Follicular cell</u> <u>hyperplasia</u>	<u>Dose</u> <u>(mg/kg-d)</u>	<u>Follicular cell</u> <u>hyperplasia</u>																									
0	5/60 (1.2)	0	19/58 (1.8)																									
540	18/59* (1.6)	510	28/60 (1.9)																									
1,040	15/59* (1.4)	1,020	33/59* (1.7)																									
2,070 ^a	18/57* (2.1)	2,110	47/59* (2.2)																									

Reference and study design	Results				
Follicular cell tumors					
NTP (1995) F344/N rat; 60/sex/treatment (10/sex/treatment evaluated at 15 months) Drinking water (0, 1.25, 2.5, 5, or 10 mg/mL) M: 0, 90, 200, or 420 ^a mg/kg-d F: 0, 180, 330, or 650 ^a mg/kg-d 2 years	Incidence ^b				
	<u>Dose (mg/kg-d)</u>	<u>Follicular cell adenoma</u>	<u>Follicular cell carcinoma</u>		
	Male				
	0	2/50	2/50		
	90	0/49	0/49		
	200	0/50	0/50		
	420 ^a	0/50	0/50		
	Female				
	0	1/50	1/50		
	180	0/50	0/50		
330	1/50	1/50			
650 ^a	0/50	0/50			
NTP (1995) B6C3F ₁ mouse; 60/sex/treatment Drinking water (0, 5, 10, or 20 mg/mL) M: 0, 540, 1,040, or 2,070 ^a mg/kg-d F: 0, 510, 1,020, or 2,110 mg/kg-d 2 years	Incidence				
	<u>Dose (mg/kg-d)</u>	<u>Follicular cell adenoma</u>	<u>Follicular cell carcinoma</u>	<u>Follicular cell adenoma or carcinoma (mortality adjusted rates)^{c,d}</u>	<u>Animals surviving to study termination</u>
	Male				
	0	1/60	0/60	1/60 (3.6%)	27/60
	540	0/59	0/59	0/59 (0.0%)	36/60
	1,040	4/59	0/59	4/59 (10.1%)	34/60
	2,070 ^a	1/57	1/57	2/57 (8.7%)	17/60
	Female				
	0	2/58	0/58	2/58 (5.6%)	36/60
	510	3/60	0/60	3/60 (8.6%)	35/60
1,020	2/59	0/59	2/59 (4.9%)	41/60	
2,110	9/59*	0/59	9/59* (19.6%)	42/60	

1
 2 ^aSurvival in the high-dose group significantly decreased.
 3 ^bResults do not include the animals sacrificed at 15 months.
 4 ^cMortality-adjusted rates were not calculated by study authors for follicular cell carcinoma. The mortality-adjusted rates for the
 5 incidence of adenomas are the same as the combined rates, with the exception of the male high-dose group, where the rate
 6 for adenomas alone was 5.9%.
 7 ^dCochran-Armitage trend test was applied to mortality-adjusted thyroid tumor incidences, by applying the NTP adjusted rates
 8 to the observed numbers of tumors to estimate the effective number at risk in each group. For male mice, $p = 0.041$; for
 9 female mice, $p = 0.028$. *Statistically significant $p \leq 0.05$ as determined by the study authors.

10 Note: Conversions from drinking water concentrations to mg/kg-d performed by study authors.



1 Source: [NTP \(1995\)](#)

2 **Figure 1-10. Exposure-response array of thyroid follicular cell effects**
 3 **following chronic oral exposure to *tert*-butanol. (Note: Only one carcinoma**
 4 **was observed in male mice in the high-dose group.)**

This document is a draft for review purposes only and does not constitute Agency policy.

1 **Mode of Action Analysis—Thyroid Effects**

2 The MOA responsible for *tert*-butanol-induced thyroid effects has been the subject of little
3 study. One hypothesis is that *tert*-butanol increases liver metabolism of thyroid hormones,
4 triggering a compensatory increase in pituitary thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH) production.
5 Such sustained increases in TSH could induce elevated thyroid follicular cell proliferation and
6 hyperplasia and lead to follicular cell adenoma and carcinoma; this enhancement of liver
7 metabolism and excretion of thyroid hormones is one of several potential antithyroid MOAs, as
8 identified in EPA’s guidance on the assessment of thyroid follicular cell tumors ([U.S. EPA, 1998a](#)).

9 To determine if the thyroid follicular cell tumors result from a chemically induced
10 antithyroid MOA, [U.S. EPA \(1998a\)](#) requires that the available database demonstrate: (1) increases
11 in thyroid cell growth, (2) thyroid and pituitary hormone changes consistent with the antithyroid
12 MOA, (3) site(s) of the antithyroid action, (4) dose correlation among the various effects, and
13 (5) reversibility of effects in the early stages of disruption. The available evidence pertaining to
14 each of these aspects of antithyroid activity following *tert*-butanol exposure is discussed below.

15 1) Increases in cell growth (required)

16 [U.S. EPA \(1998a\)](#) considers increased absolute or relative thyroid weights, histological
17 indicators of cellular hypertrophy and hyperplasia, DNA labeling, and other measurements (e.g.,
18 Ki-67 or proliferating cell nuclear antigen expression) to be indicators of increased cell growth.
19 Only a few studies ([NTP, 1997, 1995](#)) have evaluated the thyroid by routine histological
20 examination following *tert*-butanol exposure, and none investigated specific molecular endpoints.
21 None of the available long-term studies measured thyroid weight in mice, likely due to the technical
22 limitations involved, and no thyroid effects were attributed to *tert*-butanol exposure in rats treated
23 up to 2 years ([NTP, 1997, 1995](#)). The absence of treatment-related thyroid effects in rats is
24 unusual, as chemically induced thyroid tumorigenesis is observed more frequently in rats than in
25 mice ([Hurley, 1998; U.S. EPA, 1998a](#)). Although the short-term female mouse study by [Blanck et al.](#)
26 ([2010](#)) stated that thyroids were weighed, no results were reported.

27 An increase in thyroid follicular cell hyperplasia was observed in both female and male mice
28 after a 2-year drinking water exposure to *tert*-butanol ([NTP, 1995](#)). The increase was dose
29 dependent in female mice with a slight increase in severity in the highest dose, while male mice
30 experienced a similar magnitude of hyperplasia induction at all doses evaluated, with increased
31 severity at the highest dose ([NTP, 1995](#)). Thyroid follicular cell hyperplasia was not observed in any
32 mouse study with less than 2 years of exposure: No treatment-related histological alterations in the
33 thyroid of *tert*-butanol-treated (2 or 20 mg/mL) female mice after 3 or 14 days of drinking water
34 exposure ([Blanck et al., 2010](#)) were reported, in male or female mice after 13 weeks of drinking
35 water exposure ([NTP, 1995](#)), or in male or female mice following 18-day or 13-week inhalation
36 studies ([NTP, 1997](#)). The observation of increased hyperplasia in male and female mice after 2
37 years of exposure is sufficient evidence to support increased thyroid cell growth.

1 2) Changes in thyroid and relevant pituitary hormones (required)

2 Evidence of hormonal changes, including decreases in triiodothyronine (T₃) and thyroxine
3 (T₄) and increases in TSH, are required to demonstrate a disruption in the thyroid-pituitary
4 signaling axis ([U.S. EPA, 1998a](#)). [Blanck et al. \(2010\)](#) evaluated serum thyroid hormones in mice
5 after 3 or 14 days of exposure to *tert*-butanol. No *tert*-butanol-related effects were observed in T₃,
6 T₄, or TSH levels after 3 days, and although both T₃ and T₄ levels were significantly decreased
7 approximately 10–20% after 14 days of treatment with *tert*-butanol, TSH levels remained
8 unaffected. Similar results were reported with the positive control (phenobarbital). The limited
9 evidence available from this single study suggests that although T₃ and T₄ levels were decreased
10 after 14 days, this perturbation likely did not exceed the range of homeostatic regulation in female
11 B6C3F₁ mice and thus was not likely to induce compensatory thyroid follicular cell proliferation.
12 Multiple lines of evidence support this observation: (1) TSH levels were unaffected, indicating that
13 the decrease in T₃ and T₄ levels was not severe enough to stimulate increased TSH secretion by the
14 pituitary in this timeframe; (2) thyroid hyperplasia was not induced in this study, or any others
15 exposing mice to similar or greater concentrations for 2.5–13 weeks, suggesting that thyroid
16 proliferation was either not induced by the hormone fluctuations or that any follicular cell
17 proliferation during this period was too slight to be detected by routine histopathological
18 examination; (3) the maximal decrease in T₃ or T₄ hormone levels induced by *tert*-butanol exposure
19 after 14 days (i.e., ~20%) was well within the range of fluctuation in T₃ and T₄ hormone levels
20 reported to occur between the 3- and 14-day control groups [15–40%; ([Blanck et al., 2010](#))].
21 Although the lower T₃ and T₄ levels following *tert*-butanol were later attributed by the study
22 authors to an increase in liver metabolism (see next section), alternatively, they could be due to a
23 variety of other possible, yet uninvestigated, molecular interactions of *tert*-butanol. Such
24 interactions might include (1) inhibition of iodide transport into thyroid follicular cells, (2) thyroid
25 peroxidase inhibition, (3) thyroid follicular cell dysfunction leading to inhibition of thyroid
26 hormone production or release, or (4) inhibition of 5'-monodeiodinase ([Hurley, 1998](#); [U.S. EPA,](#)
27 [1998a](#)).

28 The absence of information regarding thyroid hormone levels in male mice and lack of
29 molecular studies evaluating exposures >2 weeks in female mice are significant deficiencies in the
30 available database. Together, although small decreases in some thyroid hormone levels have been
31 reported in female mice, the available evidence is inadequate to determine if *tert*-butanol
32 negatively affects the pituitary-thyroid signaling axis in female mice; furthermore, no evidence was
33 available to evaluate this effect in male mice.

34 3) Site(s) of antithyroid action (required)

35 The thyroid and liver are two of several potential sites of antithyroid action, with the liver
36 the most common, where increased microsomal enzyme activity could enhance thyroid hormone
37 metabolism and removal ([U.S. EPA, 1998a](#)). Rats are thought to be more sensitive than mice to this

1 aspect of antithyroid activity ([Roques et al., 2013](#); [Qatanani et al., 2005](#); [U.S. EPA, 1998a](#)); however,
2 rats exposed to *tert*-butanol for 2 years exhibited no treatment-related thyroid effects, while mice
3 did. Typically, chronic induction of liver microsomal enzyme activity resulting from repeated
4 chemical exposure would manifest some manner of liver histopathology, such as hepatocellular
5 hypertrophy or hyperplasia ([U.S. EPA, 1998a](#); [NTP, 1995](#)). In a 14-day mechanistic investigation,
6 *tert*-butanol had no effect on liver weight when compared to the control group, but centrilobular
7 hepatocellular hypertrophy was reported in 2/5 livers from high-dose mice versus 0/6 in control
8 and 0/5 in low-dose mice ([Blanck et al., 2010](#)). Relative liver weights increased in male and female
9 mice after 13 weeks of oral exposure ([NTP, 1995](#)) to higher doses than those evaluated by [Blanck et](#)
10 [al. \(2010\)](#), although absolute liver weight measurements in treated animals showed little change
11 from controls suggesting that the relative measures could have been related to decreases in body
12 weight rather than specific liver effects. Relative (and absolute) liver weights were increased in
13 female mice (only) after 13 weeks of inhalation exposure at the two highest concentrations ([NTP,](#)
14 [1997](#)); liver weight was not reported in mice orally exposed for 2 years ([NTP, 1995](#)). No increase in
15 mouse hepatocellular hypertrophic or hyperplastic histopathology was reported following 2.5
16 weeks to 2 years of exposure ([NTP, 1997, 1995](#)). In fact, the only liver pathology associated with
17 *tert*-butanol exposure in either rats or mice from these studies was an increase in fatty liver in male
18 mice in the high-dose group after 2 years of oral exposure ([NTP, 1995](#)). Although increased fatty
19 liver could indicate some nonspecific metabolic alteration, the absence of a similar treatment-
20 related effect in livers from female mice, which were sensitive to both thyroid follicular cell
21 hyperplasia and tumor induction, suggests that it might not be related to the thyroid tumorigenesis.

22 One study evaluated liver enzyme expression and found highly dose-responsive induction
23 of a single phase I cytochrome p450 enzyme (CYP2B10) following 14 days of *tert*-butanol exposure
24 in female mice, with much smaller increases in the expression of another phase I enzyme, CYP2B9,
25 and the phase II thyroid hormone-metabolizing enzyme, sulfotransferase 1A1 [(SULT1A1; [Blanck et](#)
26 [al. \(2010\)](#)]. CYP2B enzyme induction is commonly used as an indication of constitutive androstane
27 receptor (CAR) activation; CAR can induce expression of a wide range of hepatic enzymes, including
28 several CYPs along with thyroid hormone-metabolizing sulfotransferases ([Roques et al., 2013](#)). The
29 only thyroid hormone-metabolizing enzyme induced by *tert*-butanol, however, was SULT1A1,
30 which has been reported to be inducible in a CAR-independent manner in mice ([Qatanani et al.,](#)
31 [2005](#)). Based on alterations in hepatic phase I and phase II enzyme activities and gene expression,
32 the above data suggest a possible role for increased thyroid hormone clearance in the liver
33 following repeated *tert*-butanol exposure; however, the expression changes in these few enzymes
34 are not supported by any liver histopathological effects in mice exposed for longer durations, so
35 whether this enzyme induction is transient, or simply insufficient to induce liver pathology after >2
36 weeks of exposure, is unknown. As noted above, no evidence is available to evaluate the potential
37 for intrathyroidal or any other extrahepatic effects in female mice or for any of these molecular

1 endpoints in male mice; therefore, the available evidence is inadequate to determine if major site(s)
2 of antithyroid action are affected.

3 4) Dose correlation (required)

4 Confidence in the disruption of the thyroid-pituitary function is enhanced when dose
5 correlation is present among the hormone levels producing various changes in thyroid
6 histopathology, including thyroid tumors ([U.S. EPA, 1998a](#)). Furthermore, if thyroid hormone levels
7 were affected by liver enzyme induction, confidence would be increased by a concordance among
8 liver effects, thyroid hormone levels, and thyroid pathology. Thyroid hormone levels were
9 evaluated only in female mice exposed to *tert*-butanol; after 2 weeks of exposure, both T₃ and T₄
10 were decreased with both doses (2 and 20 mg/L), and TSH was unaffected at either dose ([Blanck et
11 al., 2010](#)). Liver expression of CYP2B10 was increased in a dose-responsive manner, while
12 *SULT1A1* mRNA was induced by 20–30% at both doses ([Blanck et al., 2010](#)). As described above,
13 induction of liver microsomal enzyme activity would manifest some manner of liver histopathology
14 ([Maronpot et al., 2010](#); [U.S. EPA, 1998a](#); [NTP, 1995](#)), and, consistent with this expected association,
15 centrilobular hepatocellular hypertrophy was reported in 2/5 high-dose mice exposed for 2 weeks
16 ([Blanck et al., 2010](#)). No liver histopathology, however, was attributed to *tert*-butanol exposure in
17 female mice exposed for 2.5 weeks to 2 years to comparable *tert*-butanol concentrations ([NTP,
18 1997, 1995](#)). Although liver enzyme levels and activity were not specifically evaluated following
19 subchronic to chronic exposure, the lack of liver pathology suggests a comparable lack of enzyme
20 induction. Conversely, no histopathological alterations were reported in the thyroids of female mice
21 after 2 weeks of oral exposure at doses that elevated some liver enzyme levels ([Blanck et al., 2010](#)).

22 Following 2 years of oral exposure, both follicular cell hyperplasia and follicular cell tumor
23 incidence were increased in mice, despite a lack of treatment-related liver pathology ([NTP, 1995](#))
24 (Figure 1-10). Any associations relating hormone changes to thyroid pathology or liver enzyme
25 induction are limited due to the inadequate database (described above); the available evidence
26 suggests little concordance among reports of liver, pituitary, and thyroid effects in female mice,
27 and no evidence was available to evaluate these associations in male mice.

28 5) Reversibility (required)

29 Chemicals acting via an antithyroid MOA have effects (e.g., increased TSH levels, thyroid
30 follicular cell proliferation) that are reversible after cessation of treatment ([U.S. EPA, 1998a](#)).
31 Although increased TSH levels have not been demonstrated following *tert*-butanol exposure,
32 thyroid follicular cell proliferation was observed following chronic exposure. As no studies have
33 evaluated changes in thyroid hormones or thyroid histopathology after cessation of *tert*-butanol
34 treatment, however, the available evidence is inadequate to evaluate reversibility of these effects.

35 In summary, the available database sufficiently supports only (1) increases in thyroid cell
36 growth. The existing data are inadequate to evaluate (2) thyroid and pituitary hormone changes
37 consistent with the antithyroid MOA, (3) site(s) of the antithyroid action, or (5) reversibility of

1 effects in the early stages of disruption. Although these inadequacies also limit the evaluation of (4)
2 dose correlation among the various effects, the available evidence suggests that little correlation
3 exists among reported thyroid, pituitary, and liver endpoints. Together, the database is inadequate
4 to determine if an antithyroid MOA is operating in mice. In the absence of information to indicate
5 otherwise, the thyroid tumors observed in mice are considered relevant to humans.

6 ***Integration of Thyroid Effects***

7 The thyroid endpoints reported following chronic exposure to *tert*-butanol include
8 increases in follicular cell hyperplasia and tumors in male and female mice. As discussed above, due
9 to inadequacies in four of the five required areas ([U.S. EPA, 1998a](#)), the evidence is inadequate to
10 determine if an antithyroid MOA is operating in mice; therefore, the MOA(s) for thyroid
11 tumorigenesis has not been identified. EPA considers the thyroid follicular cell hyperplasia to be an
12 early event in the neoplastic progression of thyroid follicular cell tumors, and no other noncancer
13 effects on the thyroid were observed. Thus, the hazard and dose-response conclusions regarding
14 the thyroid follicular cell hyperplasia and tumors associated with *tert*-butanol exposure are
15 discussed as part of the overall weight of evidence for carcinogenicity in Section 1.3.2.

16 **1.2.3 Developmental Effects**

17 ***Synthesis of Effects Related to Development***

18 Four studies evaluated developmental effects [three oral or inhalation developmental
19 studies ([Faulkner et al., 1989](#); [Nelson et al., 1989](#); [Daniel and Evans, 1982](#)) and a one-generation,
20 oral reproductive study ([Huntingdon Life Sciences, 2004](#))] in animals exposed to *tert*-butanol via
21 liquid diet (i.e., maltose/dextrin), oral gavage, or inhalation. No developmental epidemiological
22 studies are available for *tert*-butanol. The animal studies are arranged in the evidence tables by
23 species, strain, and route of exposure. The design, conduct, and reporting of each study were
24 reviewed, and each study was considered adequate to provide information pertinent to this
25 assessment. Two studies, however, were considered less informative: [Faulkner et al. \(1989\)](#),
26 because it did not provide sufficient information on the dams to determine if fetal effects occurred
27 due to maternal toxicity, and [Daniel and Evans \(1982\)](#) due to the use of individual data instead of
28 litter means as the statistical unit of analysis.

29 Developmental effects of *tert*-butanol observed after oral exposure (liquid diets or gavage)
30 in several mouse strains and one rat strain include measures of embryo-fetal loss or viability (e.g.,
31 increased number of resorptions, decreased numbers of neonates per litter) and decreased fetal
32 body weight ([Huntingdon Life Sciences, 2004](#); [Faulkner et al., 1989](#); [Daniel and Evans, 1982](#)). [Daniel](#)
33 [and Evans \(1982\)](#) observed decreases in body weight gain during post-natal days (PNDs) 2–10;
34 data suggest, however, that this effect might be due to altered maternal behavior or nutritional
35 status. In addition, a single dose study reported a small increase in the incidence of variations of the
36 skull or sternebrae in two mouse strains ([Faulkner et al., 1989](#)). Although variations in skeletal

1 development were noted in the study, no malformations were reported. Similar developmental
2 effects were observed after whole-body inhalation exposure in Sprague-Dawley rats for 7
3 hours/day on gestation days (GDs) 1–19 ([Nelson et al., 1989](#)). Fetal effects included dose-related
4 reductions in body weight in male and female fetuses and higher incidence of skeletal variations
5 when analyzed based on individual fetuses (but not on a per litter basis).

6 In these studies, fetal effects are generally observed at high doses that cause toxicity in the
7 dams as measured by clinical signs (e.g., decreased [~7–36%] body weight gain and food
8 consumption and reported ataxia and lethargy) (Table 1-12; Figure 1-11; Figure 1-12). As stated in
9 the *Guidelines for Developmental Toxicity Risk Assessment* ([U.S. EPA, 1991b](#)), “an integrated
10 evaluation must be performed considering all maternal and developmental endpoints.” “[W]hen
11 adverse developmental effects are produced only at doses that cause minimal maternal toxicity; in
12 these cases, the developmental effects are still considered to represent developmental toxicity and
13 should not be discounted.” Although, at doses of “excessive maternal toxicity...information on
14 developmental effects may be difficult to interpret and of limited value.” In considering the
15 observed fetal and maternal toxicity data following *tert*-butanol exposure and the severity of the
16 maternal effects, the role of maternal toxicity in the developmental effects observed at the doses
17 used remains unclear. Specifically, discerning from the available data whether the fetal effects are
18 directly related to *tert*-butanol treatment or are secondary to maternal toxicity is not possible.

1 **Table 1-12. Evidence pertaining to developmental effects in animals following**
 2 **exposure to tert-butanol**

Reference and study design	Results						
Huntingdon Life Sciences (2004) Sprague-Dawley rat; 12/sex/treatment Gavage 0, 64, 160, 400, or 1,000 mg/kg-d F0 males: 9 weeks beginning 4 weeks prior to mating F0 females: 4 weeks prior to mating through PND 21 F1 males and females: 7 weeks (throughout gestation and lactation; 1 male and 1 female from each litter were dosed directly from PND 21–28)	Response relative to control						
	Maternal effects						
	Percent change compared to control:						
	<u>Dose</u> (mg/kg-d)	<u>Body weight gain</u> <u>GD 0–20</u>	<u>Food consumption</u> <u>GD 0–20</u>	<u>Body weight gain</u> <u>PND 1–21</u>	<u>Food consumption</u> <u>LD 1–14</u>	<u>Live pups/litter response</u>	
	0	-	-	-	-	-	
	64	-3	0	3	-2	-9	
	160	-4	0	-10	-6	-11	
	400	0	4	3	0	-7	
	1000	-16*	0	100*	-16	-33*	
	Dams dosed with 400 or 1000 mg/kg-d showed CNS effects (e.g., ataxia, lethargy) that were undetectable by 4 weeks of exposure in animals exposed to 400 mg/kg-d but not those in the higher dose group.						
	F1 effects						
	<u>Dose</u> (mg/kg-d)	<u>Viability index (pup survival to PND 4)</u>	<u>Lactation index (pup survival to PND 21)</u>	<u>Sex ratio (% males)</u>	<u>Pup weight/litter PND 1 relative to control (%)</u>	<u>Pup weight PND 28 relative to control (%)</u>	
						Male	Female
	0	96.4	100	54.4	-	-	-
	64	98.7	100	52.3	6	2	0
160	98.2	100	50.9	4	0	-4	
400	99.4	99.2	53.5	7	0	-2	
1000	74.1*	98.8	52.1	-10	-12*	-8	

Toxicological Review of tert-Butyl Alcohol

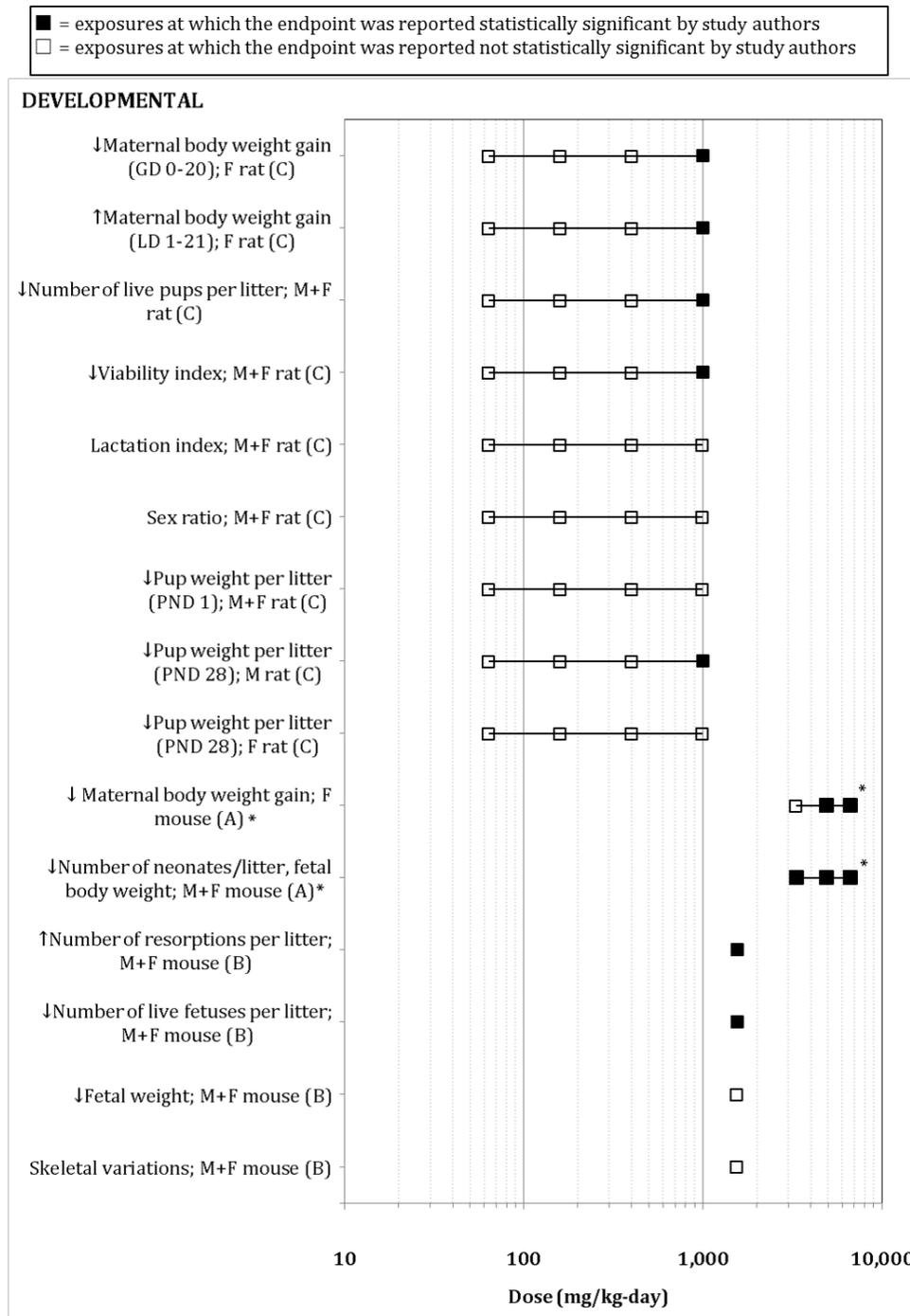
Reference and study design	Results																																			
<p>Daniel and Evans (1982) Swiss Webster (Cox) mouse; 15 pregnant dams/treatment Liquid diet (0, 0.5, 0.75, 1.0%, w/v) 0 (isocaloric amounts of maltose/dextrin), 3,324, 4,879, 6,677 mg/kg-d GD 6–20</p>	<p>No statistical analysis was conducted on any of these data.</p> <p>Maternal</p> <p>Percent change compared to control:</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th align="center"><u>Dose</u> (mg/kg-d)</th> <th align="center"><u>Food consumption</u> (mean g/animal/day)</th> <th align="center"><u>Body weight</u> gain</th> <th align="center"><u>Number of</u> <u>litters (%</u> <u>pregnant dams)</u></th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td align="center">0</td> <td align="center">-</td> <td align="center">-</td> <td align="center">11 (77%)</td> </tr> <tr> <td align="center">3,324</td> <td align="center">2</td> <td align="center">-3</td> <td align="center">12 (80%)</td> </tr> <tr> <td align="center">4,879</td> <td align="center">-3</td> <td align="center">-19</td> <td align="center">8 (53%)</td> </tr> <tr> <td align="center">6,677</td> <td align="center">-4</td> <td align="center">-20</td> <td align="center">7 (47%)</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Authors note that lower food consumption in higher <i>tert</i>-butanol dose groups reflects problems with pair feeding and maternal sedation.</p> <p>Fetal</p> <p>Percent change compared to control:</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th align="center"><u>Dose</u> (mg/kg-d)</th> <th align="center"><u>Number of</u> <u>neonates/litter</u></th> <th align="center"><u>Fetal body</u> <u>weight on PND</u> <u>2</u></th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td align="center">0</td> <td align="center">-</td> <td align="center">-</td> </tr> <tr> <td align="center">3,324</td> <td align="center">-1</td> <td align="center">-7</td> </tr> <tr> <td align="center">4,879</td> <td align="center">-29</td> <td align="center">-19</td> </tr> <tr> <td align="center">6,677</td> <td align="center">-49</td> <td align="center">-38</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Number of stillborn also increased with dose (3, 6, 14, and 20, respectively), but the number of stillborn per litter was not provided. The high dose also caused a delay in eye opening and a lag in weight gain during PND 2–10 (information was provided only in text or figures)</p>	<u>Dose</u> (mg/kg-d)	<u>Food consumption</u> (mean g/animal/day)	<u>Body weight</u> gain	<u>Number of</u> <u>litters (%</u> <u>pregnant dams)</u>	0	-	-	11 (77%)	3,324	2	-3	12 (80%)	4,879	-3	-19	8 (53%)	6,677	-4	-20	7 (47%)	<u>Dose</u> (mg/kg-d)	<u>Number of</u> <u>neonates/litter</u>	<u>Fetal body</u> <u>weight on PND</u> <u>2</u>	0	-	-	3,324	-1	-7	4,879	-29	-19	6,677	-49	-38
<u>Dose</u> (mg/kg-d)	<u>Food consumption</u> (mean g/animal/day)	<u>Body weight</u> gain	<u>Number of</u> <u>litters (%</u> <u>pregnant dams)</u>																																	
0	-	-	11 (77%)																																	
3,324	2	-3	12 (80%)																																	
4,879	-3	-19	8 (53%)																																	
6,677	-4	-20	7 (47%)																																	
<u>Dose</u> (mg/kg-d)	<u>Number of</u> <u>neonates/litter</u>	<u>Fetal body</u> <u>weight on PND</u> <u>2</u>																																		
0	-	-																																		
3,324	-1	-7																																		
4,879	-29	-19																																		
6,677	-49	-38																																		
<p>Faulkner et al. (1989) CBA/J mouse; 7 pregnant females in control, 12 pregnant females in treated Gavage (10.5 mmoles/kg twice a day); 0 (tap water), 1,556 mg/kg-d GD 6–18</p>	<p>Maternal results not reported.</p> <p>Fetal</p> <p>Percent change compared to control: Incidence:</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th align="center"><u>Dose</u> (mg/kg-d)</th> <th align="center"><u>Resorptions/litter</u></th> <th align="center"><u>Live</u> <u>fetuses/</u> <u>litter</u></th> <th align="center"><u>Fetal</u> <u>weight</u></th> <th align="center"><u>Sternebral</u> <u>variations</u></th> <th align="center"><u>Skull</u> <u>variations</u></th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td align="center">0</td> <td align="center">-</td> <td align="center">-</td> <td align="center">-</td> <td align="center">4/28</td> <td align="center">1/28</td> </tr> <tr> <td align="center">1,556</td> <td align="center">118*</td> <td align="center">-41*</td> <td align="center">-4</td> <td align="center">7/30</td> <td align="center">3/30</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><u>Sternebral</u> variations: misaligned or unossified sternebrae Skull variations: moderate reduction in ossification of supraoccipital bone</p> <p>Number of total resorptions (10 resorptions/66 implants in controls, 37/94 implants in treated) increased ($p < 0.05$)</p>	<u>Dose</u> (mg/kg-d)	<u>Resorptions/litter</u>	<u>Live</u> <u>fetuses/</u> <u>litter</u>	<u>Fetal</u> <u>weight</u>	<u>Sternebral</u> <u>variations</u>	<u>Skull</u> <u>variations</u>	0	-	-	-	4/28	1/28	1,556	118*	-41*	-4	7/30	3/30																	
<u>Dose</u> (mg/kg-d)	<u>Resorptions/litter</u>	<u>Live</u> <u>fetuses/</u> <u>litter</u>	<u>Fetal</u> <u>weight</u>	<u>Sternebral</u> <u>variations</u>	<u>Skull</u> <u>variations</u>																															
0	-	-	-	4/28	1/28																															
1,556	118*	-41*	-4	7/30	3/30																															

Toxicological Review of tert-Butyl Alcohol

Reference and study design	Results																																								
<p>Faulkner et al. (1989) C57BL/6J mouse; 5 pregnant females in controls, 9 pregnant females treated Gavage (10.5 mmoles/kg twice a day) 0 (tap water), 1,556 mg/kg-d GD 6–18</p>	<p>Maternal results not reported.</p> <p>Fetal</p> <p style="text-align: right;">Percent change compared to control: Incidence:</p> <table style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="text-align: center;"><u>Dose</u> (mg/kg-d)</th> <th style="text-align: center;"><u>Resorptions/litter</u></th> <th style="text-align: center;"><u>Live fetuses/litter</u></th> <th style="text-align: center;"><u>Fetal weight</u></th> <th style="text-align: center;"><u>Sternebral variations</u></th> <th style="text-align: center;"><u>Skull variations</u></th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">0</td> <td style="text-align: center;">-</td> <td style="text-align: center;">-</td> <td style="text-align: center;">-</td> <td style="text-align: center;">5/21</td> <td style="text-align: center;">1/21</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">1,556</td> <td style="text-align: center;">428*</td> <td style="text-align: center;">-58*</td> <td style="text-align: center;">-4</td> <td style="text-align: center;">9/16</td> <td style="text-align: center;">7/16</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><u>Sternebral</u> variations: misaligned or unossified sternebrae Skull variations: moderate reduction in ossification of supraoccipital bone Number of total resorptions (4 resorptions/44 implants in controls, 38/68 implants in treated) increased ($p < 0.05$)</p>	<u>Dose</u> (mg/kg-d)	<u>Resorptions/litter</u>	<u>Live fetuses/litter</u>	<u>Fetal weight</u>	<u>Sternebral variations</u>	<u>Skull variations</u>	0	-	-	-	5/21	1/21	1,556	428*	-58*	-4	9/16	7/16																						
<u>Dose</u> (mg/kg-d)	<u>Resorptions/litter</u>	<u>Live fetuses/litter</u>	<u>Fetal weight</u>	<u>Sternebral variations</u>	<u>Skull variations</u>																																				
0	-	-	-	5/21	1/21																																				
1,556	428*	-58*	-4	9/16	7/16																																				
<p>Nelson et al. (1989) Sprague-Dawley rat; 15 pregnant dams/treatment Inhalation analytical concentration: 0, 2,200, 3,510, 5,030 ppm (0, 6,669, 10,640, 15,248 mg/m³), dynamic whole-body chamber 7 hr/d GD 1–19</p>	<p>Maternal: Unsteady gait (no statistical tests reported), dose-dependent ↓ in body weight gain (results presented in figure only), dose-dependent ↓ in food consumption ranging from 7 to 36%, depending on dose and time</p> <p>Fetal</p> <p style="text-align: right;">Percent change compared to control (mean ± standard error):</p> <table style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="text-align: center;"><u>Dose</u> (mg/m³)</th> <th style="text-align: center;"><u>Number of live fetuses/litter</u></th> <th style="text-align: center;"><u>Resorptions per litter</u></th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">0</td> <td style="text-align: center;">-(13 ± 2)</td> <td style="text-align: center;">-(1.1 ± 1.2)</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">6,669</td> <td style="text-align: center;">0 (13 ± 4)</td> <td style="text-align: center;">9 (1.2 ± 1.1)</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">10,640</td> <td style="text-align: center;">15 (15 ± 2)</td> <td style="text-align: center;">-18 (0.9 ± 1.0)</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">15,248</td> <td style="text-align: center;">8 (14 ± 2)</td> <td style="text-align: center;">0 (1.1 ± 0.9)</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p style="text-align: right;">Percent change compared to control: Incidence:</p> <table style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="text-align: center;"><u>Dose</u> (mg/m³)</th> <th style="text-align: center;"><u>Fetal weight (males)</u></th> <th style="text-align: center;"><u>Fetal weight (females)</u></th> <th style="text-align: center;"><u>Skeletal variation by litter</u></th> <th style="text-align: center;"><u>Skeletal variation by fetus</u></th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">0</td> <td style="text-align: center;">-</td> <td style="text-align: center;">-</td> <td style="text-align: center;">10/15</td> <td style="text-align: center;">18/96</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">6,669</td> <td style="text-align: center;">-9*</td> <td style="text-align: center;">-9*</td> <td style="text-align: center;">14/17</td> <td style="text-align: center;">35/104</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">10,640</td> <td style="text-align: center;">-12*</td> <td style="text-align: center;">-13*</td> <td style="text-align: center;">14/14</td> <td style="text-align: center;">53/103*</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">15,248</td> <td style="text-align: center;">-32*</td> <td style="text-align: center;">-31*</td> <td style="text-align: center;">12/12</td> <td style="text-align: center;">76/83*</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Skeletal variation by litter refers to the number of variations observed in the number of litters examined. Skeletal variation by fetus refers to the number of variations observed in the total number of fetuses examined. Fetuses are not categorized by litter.</p>	<u>Dose</u> (mg/m ³)	<u>Number of live fetuses/litter</u>	<u>Resorptions per litter</u>	0	-(13 ± 2)	-(1.1 ± 1.2)	6,669	0 (13 ± 4)	9 (1.2 ± 1.1)	10,640	15 (15 ± 2)	-18 (0.9 ± 1.0)	15,248	8 (14 ± 2)	0 (1.1 ± 0.9)	<u>Dose</u> (mg/m ³)	<u>Fetal weight (males)</u>	<u>Fetal weight (females)</u>	<u>Skeletal variation by litter</u>	<u>Skeletal variation by fetus</u>	0	-	-	10/15	18/96	6,669	-9*	-9*	14/17	35/104	10,640	-12*	-13*	14/14	53/103*	15,248	-32*	-31*	12/12	76/83*
<u>Dose</u> (mg/m ³)	<u>Number of live fetuses/litter</u>	<u>Resorptions per litter</u>																																							
0	-(13 ± 2)	-(1.1 ± 1.2)																																							
6,669	0 (13 ± 4)	9 (1.2 ± 1.1)																																							
10,640	15 (15 ± 2)	-18 (0.9 ± 1.0)																																							
15,248	8 (14 ± 2)	0 (1.1 ± 0.9)																																							
<u>Dose</u> (mg/m ³)	<u>Fetal weight (males)</u>	<u>Fetal weight (females)</u>	<u>Skeletal variation by litter</u>	<u>Skeletal variation by fetus</u>																																					
0	-	-	10/15	18/96																																					
6,669	-9*	-9*	14/17	35/104																																					
10,640	-12*	-13*	14/14	53/103*																																					
15,248	-32*	-31*	12/12	76/83*																																					

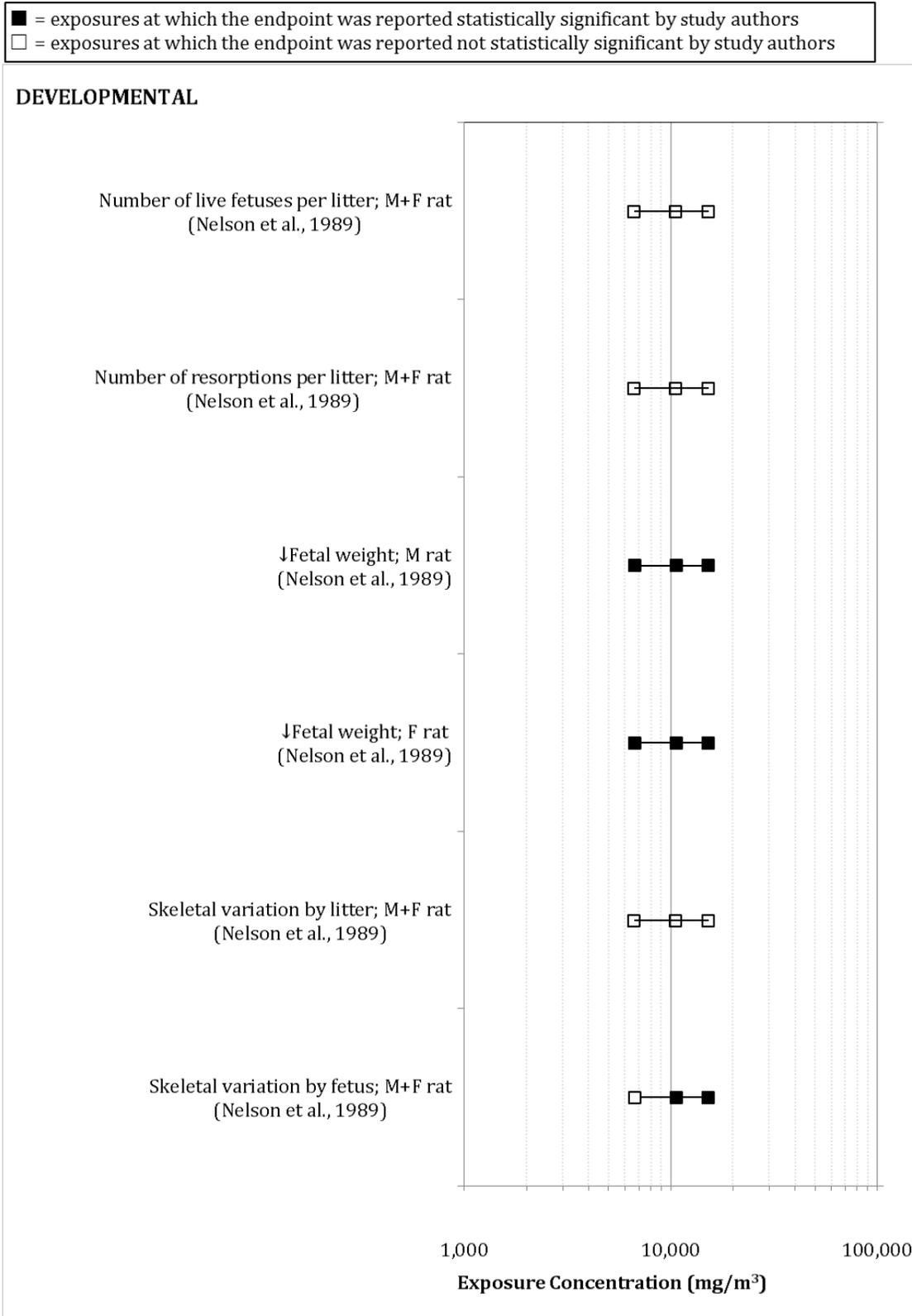
1 *Statistically significant $p \leq 0.05$, as determined by study authors. Conversions from diet concentrations to mg/kg-d
 2 performed by study authors. Conversion from ppm to mg/m³ is 1 ppm = 3.031 mg/m³.
 3

4 Note: Percentage change compared to control = (treated value – control value) ÷ control value × 100.



1 *Study authors did not conduct statistical analysis on these endpoints, but results are determined by EPA
2 to be biologically significant.
3 Sources: (A) [Daniel and Evans \(1982\)](#); (B) [Faulkner et al. \(1989\)](#); (C) [Huntingdon Life Sciences \(2004\)](#)

4 **Figure 1-11. Exposure-response array of developmental effects following oral**
5 **exposure to *tert*-butanol.**



1
2

Figure 1-12. Exposure-response array of developmental effects following inhalation exposure to *tert*-butanol.

This document is a draft for review purposes only and does not constitute Agency policy.

1 ***Mechanistic Evidence***

2 No mechanistic evidence for developmental effects was identified by the literature search.

3 ***Integration of Developmental Effects***

4 Evidence of selective developmental effects associated with *tert*-butanol exposure is
5 inadequate. Exposure to *tert*-butanol during gestation resulted in increased fetal loss, decreased
6 fetal body weight, and increases in skeletal variations in exposed offspring. Dams, however, had
7 body weight losses or gains (or both), decreased food consumption, and clinical signs of
8 intoxication at the same doses of *tert*-butanol causing fetal effects. Therefore, determining whether
9 *tert*-butanol exposure results in specific developmental toxicity or the fetal effects are due to
10 maternal toxicity is difficult, if not impossible, from the available data. Selective developmental
11 toxicity of *tert*-butanol at the higher doses examined, however, cannot be ruled out. Furthermore,
12 no adverse effects were reported in one- and two-generation reproductive/developmental studies
13 on ETBE ([Gaoua, 2004a, b](#)), providing further support for the lack of evidence supporting
14 developmental effects as possible human hazards following *tert*-butanol exposure.

15 **1.2.4 Neurodevelopmental Effects**

16 ***Synthesis of Effects Related to Neurodevelopment***

17 Three studies evaluated neurodevelopmental effects ([Nelson et al., 1991](#); [Daniel and Evans,](#)
18 [1982](#))[one in male rats; one in female rats] following *tert*-butanol exposure via liquid diet
19 (maltose/dextrin) or inhalation. No epidemiological studies on neurodevelopment are available.
20 The animal studies evaluating neurodevelopmental effects of *tert*-butanol contain study design
21 limitations. [Daniel and Evans \(1982\)](#) had few animals per treatment group, lacked comparison of
22 treatment-related effects to controls for all endpoints investigated, and performed no long-term
23 neurodevelopmental testing. Further, animals in this study had decreased dietary intake compared
24 to ad libitum control animals. The authors addressed this issue with a pair-fed experimental design,
25 but a slight decrease in maternal dietary intake remained. This decrease was likely due to
26 difficulties in the pair feeding or increased maternal sedation [Daniel and Evans \(1982\)](#). The two
27 studies by [Nelson et al. \(1991\)](#) evaluated neurodevelopmental effects after either paternal or
28 maternal exposure but did not run the exposures concurrently. The studies are arranged in the
29 evidence tables by species and sex.

30 Various neurodevelopmental effects have been observed in the available studies. Effects
31 include changes in rotarod performance following oral or inhalation exposures, decreases in open
32 field behavior and cliff avoidance following oral exposure, and reduced time hanging on wire after
33 inhalation exposure during gestation (Table 1-13).

1 Rotarod performance

2 Inconsistent results were observed across studies. Although [Daniel and Evans \(1982\)](#) found
3 decreased rotarod performance in mouse pups of dams orally exposed during gestation, [Nelson et
4 al. \(1991\)](#) observed an increase in rotarod performance in rat pups of dams exposed via inhalation
5 during gestation.

6 Neurochemical measurements

7 Biochemical or physiological changes in the brain of offspring exposed during gestation or
8 early in the postnatal period were examined in one study. In this study, [Nelson et al. \(1991\)](#)
9 reported statistically significant changes in neurochemical measurements in the brain in offspring
10 of both dams exposed via inhalation during gestation and treated adult males mated with untreated
11 dams. The strength of these results is compromised, however, because the two concentrations
12 tested (in both experiments) were not run concurrently, and only data on statistically significant
13 effects were reported. Therefore, comparison across doses or trend analysis for the effects is not
14 feasible.

15 Physiological and psychomotor development

16 [Daniel and Evans \(1982\)](#) cross-fostered half the mouse pups born to treated mothers with
17 untreated surrogate females to test the effects of maternal nutrition and behavioral factors on pup
18 physiological and psychomotor development. Results indicated that pups fostered to control dams
19 performed significantly better than those maintained with treated dams (Table 1-13)([Daniel and
20 Evans, 1982](#)). Data suggest that neurodevelopmental effects were not solely due to in utero
21 exposure to *tert*-butanol ([Daniel and Evans, 1982](#)). Interpretation of these results is limited,
22 however, as the neurodevelopmental data were presented only in figures and could not be
23 compared with controls.

1
2

Table 1-13. Evidence pertaining to neurodevelopmental effects in animals following exposure to *tert*-butanol

Reference and study design	Results
<p>Daniel and Evans (1982) Swiss Webster (Cox) mouse; 15 pregnant dams/treatment (3 or 4 dams/treatment group for neurodevelopmental endpoints) Liquid diet (0, 0.5, 0.75, or 1.0%, w/v); GD 6–20; after birth, half the pups were nursed with their treated dams and the other half were fostered by untreated dams who recently gave birth 0 (isocaloric amounts of maltose/dextrin), 3,324, 4,879, or 6,677 mg/kg-d</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • a dose-dependent increase in righting reflex time, with more time needed in animals maintained with maternal dams • a dose-dependent decrease in open field behavior, with less activity in pups maintained with maternal dams • a dose-dependent decrease in rotarod performance with the pups from maternal dams having lower performances • a dose-dependent decrease in the amount of time the pups were able to avoid a cliff, with animals maintained with their maternal dams having less avoidance time
<p>Nelson et al. (1991) Sprague-Dawley rat; 15 pregnant dams/treatment (no. of litters born not reported) Inhalation analytical concentration: 0, 6,000, or 12,000 mg/m³; dynamic whole body chamber 7 hr/d GD 1–19</p>	<p>Data were not presented specifically by dose nor were any tables or figures of the data provided</p> <p>Maternal toxicity was noted by decreased food consumption and body weight gains</p> <p>Results in offspring</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • increase in rotarod performance in high-dose group (16 versus 26 revolutions/min for controls and 12,000 mg/m³ animals, respectively) • decreased time held on wire in the performance ascent test in the low-dose group (16 sec versus 10 sec for controls and 1,750 mg/m³ animals, respectively) • for the high-dose group, no effects were noted for ascent on a wire mesh screen, open field activity, automated motor activity, avoidance conditioning, operant conditioning • for the low-dose group, no effects were observed on rotarod, open field activity, automated motor activity, avoidance conditioning, operant conditioning <p>The following differences in neurochemical measurements in the brain between control and treated offspring were observed:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 53% decrease in norepinephrine in the cerebellum at 12,000 mg/m³ • 57% decrease in met-enkephalin in the cerebrum at 12,000 mg/m³ and 83% decrease at 6,000 mg/m³ • 61% decrease in β-endorphin in the cerebellum at 12,000 mg/m³ • 67% decrease in serotonin in the midbrain at 6,000 mg/m³ • no effects were observed for other neurotransmitter levels (acetylcholine, dopamine, substance P) at both low and high doses

Reference and study design	Results
<p>Nelson et al. (1991) Adult male Sprague-Dawley rats (18/treatment) mated to untreated females Inhalation analytical concentration: 0, 6,000, or 12,000 mg/m³; dynamic whole body chamber 7 hr/d for 6 wk</p>	<p>Data were not presented specifically by dose nor were any tables or figures of the data provided</p> <p>Results (generally only specified as paternally treated versus controls) in offspring indicate</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • increase in rotarod performance (16 versus 20 revolutions/min for controls and 12,000 mg/m³ animals, respectively) • decreased time in open field (less time to reach the outer circle of the field, 210 sec versus 115 seconds for controls and 12,000 mg/m³ animals, respectively) <p>The following differences in neurochemical measurements in the brain between control and treated offspring were observed:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 39% decrease in norepinephrine in the cerebellum at 12,000 mg/m³ • 40% decrease in met-enkephalin in the cerebrum at 12,000 mg/m³ and 75% decrease at 6,000 mg/m³ • 71% decrease in β-endorphin in the cerebellum at 12,000 mg/m³ • 47% decrease in serotonin in the midbrain at 6,000 mg/m³

1 *Statistically significant $p \leq 0.05$, as determined by study authors.

2
 3 Note: Conversions from diet concentrations to mg/kg-d performed by study authors.

4 Percentage change compared to control = (treated value – control value) ÷ control value × 100.

5 ***Mechanistic Evidence***

6 No mechanistic evidence for neurodevelopmental effects was identified by the literature
 7 search. The available mechanistic information for *tert*-butanol is limited to three studies examining
 8 muscarinic acetylcholine receptor function, and what, if any, relationship these effects might have
 9 pertaining to developmental neurotoxicity effects remains unclear ([Bale and Lee, 2016](#)).

10 ***Integration of Neurodevelopmental Effects***

11 Neurodevelopmental effects, including decreased brain weight, changes in brain
 12 biochemistry, and changes in behavioral performances, have been observed. Each study evaluating
 13 neurodevelopmental effects, however, had limitations in study design, reporting, or both. In
 14 addition, results were not always consistent between studies or across dose. At this time,
 15 information is inadequate to draw conclusions regarding neurodevelopmental toxicity.

16 **1.2.5 Reproductive Effects**

17 ***Synthesis of Effects Related to Reproduction***

18 Several studies evaluated reproductive effects [a one-generation, oral reproductive study
 19 ([Huntingdon Life Sciences, 2004](#)) and subchronic effects in rats and mice following oral and
 20 inhalation exposure ([NTP, 1997, 1995](#))] in animals exposed to *tert*-butanol via oral gavage, drinking

1 water, or inhalation for ≥ 63 days. The studies are arranged in the evidence tables by sex, route of
 2 exposure, duration of exposure, and species. The collection of studies evaluating reproductive
 3 effects of *tert*-butanol is limited by the absence of two-generation reproductive oral or inhalation
 4 studies and by lack of human studies on reproduction. The design, conduct, and reporting of each
 5 study were reviewed, and each study was considered adequate to provide information pertinent to
 6 this assessment.

7 Reproductive endpoints, such as reproductive organ weights, estrous cycle length, and
 8 sperm effects were examined following either oral or inhalation exposure ([Huntingdon Life
 9 Sciences, 2004](#); [NTP, 1997, 1995](#)) (Table 1-14; Figure 1-13; Figure 1-14). In males, the only
 10 significant effect observed was a slight decrease in sperm motility for F0 males treated with 1000
 11 mg/kg-day *tert*-butanol ([Huntingdon Life Sciences, 2004](#)). No significant changes in sperm motility
 12 were reported following oral exposure in other rat studies or via inhalation exposure in mice or
 13 rats. In addition, the reduced motility in treated animals falls within the range of historical control
 14 data, and, therefore, its biological significance is uncertain. In female B6C3F₁ mice, estrous cycle
 15 length was increased 28% following oral exposure to 11,620 mg/kg-day ([NTP, 1995](#)). No significant
 16 changes in estrous cycle length were observed following oral exposure in rats or inhalation
 17 exposure in mice or rats.

18

19 **Table 1-14. Evidence pertaining to reproductive effects in animals following**
 20 **exposure to *tert*-butanol**

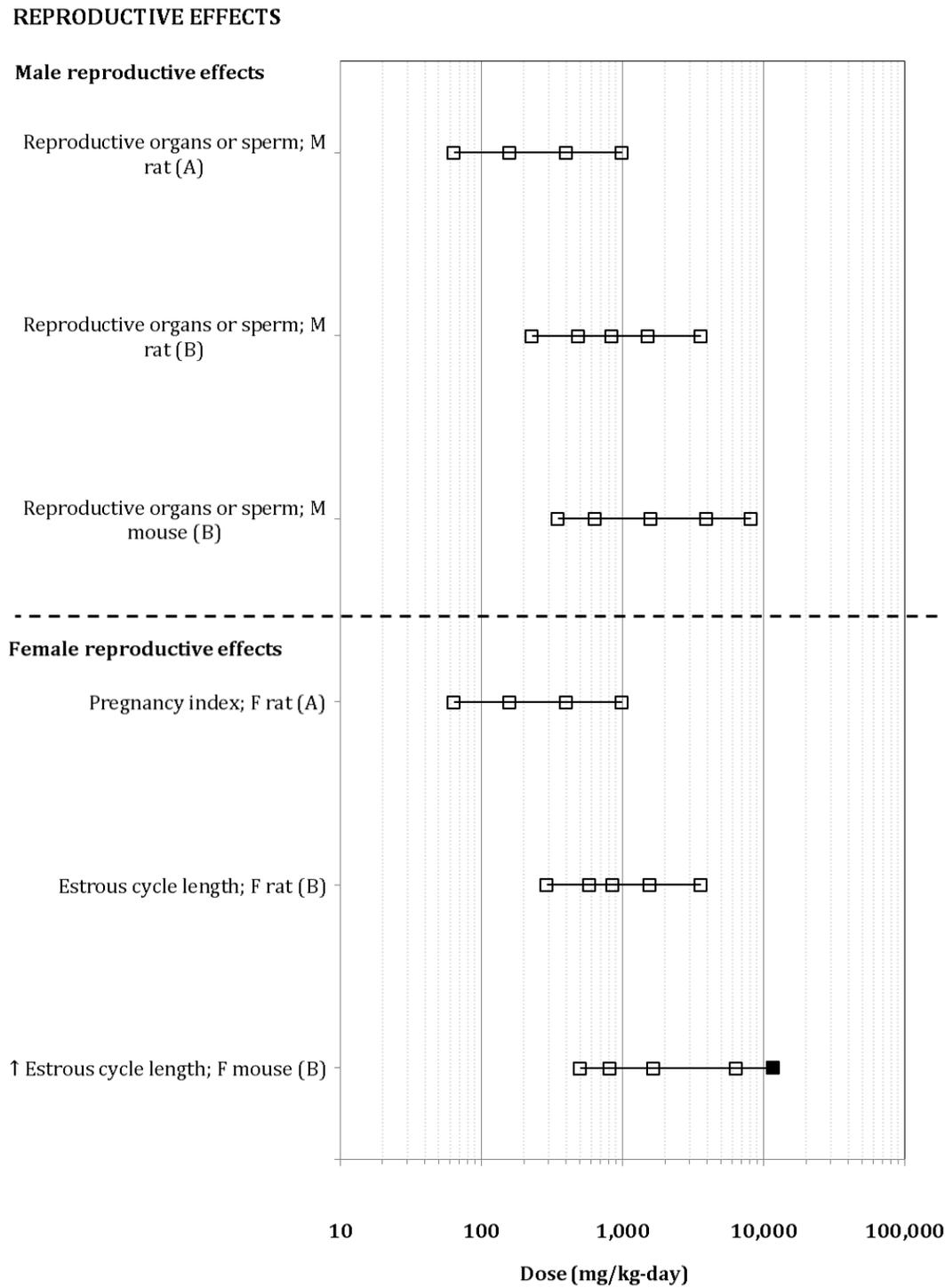
Reference and study design	Results
<i>Male reproductive effects</i>	
Huntingdon Life Sciences (2004) Sprague-Dawley rat; 12/sex/treatment Gavage 0, 64, 160, 400, or 1,000 mg/kg-d F0 males: 9 weeks beginning 4 weeks prior to mating PND 21	F0 reproductive effects Sperm motility (only control and high-dose groups examined) 0: 94% 1000: 91%* No other significant effect on weights of male reproductive organs or sperm observed
NTP (1995) F344/N rat; 10/sex/treatment Drinking water (0, 2.5, 5, 10, 20, or 40 mg/mL) M: 0, 230, 490, 840, 1,520, 3,610 ^a mg/kg-d 13 weeks	No significant effect on weights of male reproductive organs or sperm observed
NTP (1995) B6C3F ₁ mouse; 10/sex/treatment Drinking water (0, 2.5, 5, 10, 20, or 40 mg/mL) M: 0, 350, 640, 1,590, 3,940, 8,210 ^a mg/kg-d 13 weeks	No significant effect on weights of male reproductive organs or sperm observed

Reference and study design	Results
<p>NTP (1997) F344/N rat; 10/sex/treatment Inhalation analytical concentration: 0, 134, 272, 542, 1,080, or 2,101 ppm (0, 406, 824, 1,643, 3,273 or 6,368 mg/m³), dynamic whole body chamber 6 hr/d, 5 d/wk 13 weeks Generation method (Sonimist Ultrasonic spray nozzle nebulizer), analytical concentration and method were reported</p>	<p>No significant effect on weights of male reproductive organs or sperm observed</p> <p>Evaluations were performed only for concentrations ≥542 ppm (1,643 mg/m³)</p>
<p>NTP (1997) B6C3F₁ mouse; 10/sex/treatment Inhalation analytical concentration: 0, 134, 272, 542, 1,080, or 2,101 ppm (0, 406, 824, 1,643, 3,273 or 6,368 mg/m³), dynamic whole body chamber 6 hr/d, 5 d/wk 13 weeks Generation method (Sonimist Ultrasonic spray nozzle nebulizer), analytical concentration and method were reported</p>	<p>No significant effect on weights of male reproductive organs or sperm observed</p> <p>Evaluations were performed only for concentrations ≥542 ppm (1,643 mg/m³)</p>
<i>Female reproductive effects</i>	
<p>Huntingdon Life Sciences (2004) Sprague-Dawley rat; 12/sex/treatment Gavage 0, 64, 160, 400, or 1,000 mg/kg-d F0 females: 4 weeks prior to mating through PND 21</p>	<p>Pregnancy index</p> <p>91.7% 91.7% 100% 100% 91.7%</p>
<p>NTP (1995) F344/N rat; 10/sex/treatment Drinking water (0, 2.5, 5, 10, 20, or 40 mg/mL) F: 0, 290, 590, 850, 1,560, 3,620^a mg/kg-d 13 weeks</p>	<p>No significant effect on female estrous cycle (0, -2, -4, 0, 8% change relative to control)</p>
<p>NTP (1995) B6C3F₁ mouse; 10/sex/treatment Drinking water (0, 2.5, 5, 10, 20, or 40 mg/mL) F: 0, 500, 820, 1,660, 6,430, 11,620^a mg/kg-d 13 weeks</p>	<p>↑ length of estrous cycle</p> <p><i>Response relative to control: 0, 5, 5, 5, 6, 28*%</i></p>

Reference and study design	Results
<p>NTP (1997) F344/N rat; 10/sex/treatment Inhalation analytical concentration: 0, 134, 272, 542, 1,080, or 2,101 ppm (0, 406, 824, 1,643, 3,273 or 6,368 mg/m³), dynamic whole body chamber 6 hr/d, 5 d/wk 13 weeks Generation method (Sonimist Ultrasonic spray nozzle nebulizer), analytical concentration and method were reported</p>	<p>No significant effect on female estrous cycle (0, -4, 2, 4% change relative to control) Evaluations were performed only for concentrations ≥542 ppm (1,643 mg/m³)</p>
<p>NTP (1997) B6C3F₁ mouse; 10/sex/treatment Inhalation analytical concentration: 0, 134, 272, 542, 1,080, or 2,101 ppm (0, 406, 824, 1,643, 3,273 or 6,368 mg/m³), dynamic whole body chamber 6 hr/d, 5 d/wk 13 weeks Generation method (Sonimist Ultrasonic spray nozzle nebulizer), analytical concentration and method were reported</p>	<p>No significant effect on female estrous cycle (0, -3, -9, -5% change relative to control) Evaluations were only performed for concentrations ≥542 ppm (1,643 mg/m³)</p>

- 1 *Statistically significant $p \leq 0.05$, as determined by the study authors.
- 2 Notes: Conversions from drinking water concentrations to mg/kg-d performed by study authors.
- 3 Conversion from ppm to mg/m³ is 1 ppm = 3.031 mg/m³.
- 4 Percent change compared to control = (treated value – control value) ÷ control value × 100

■ = exposures at which the endpoint was reported statistically significant by study authors
 □ = exposures at which the endpoint was reported not statistically significant by study authors



1 Sources: (A) [Huntingdon Life Sciences \(2004\)](#); (B) [NTP \(1995\)](#).

2 **Figure 1-13. Exposure-response array of reproductive effects following oral**
 3 **exposure to *tert*-butanol.**

This document is a draft for review purposes only and does not constitute Agency policy.

■ = exposures at which the endpoint was reported statistically significant by study authors
 □ = exposures at which the endpoint was reported not statistically significant by study authors

REPRODUCTIVE EFFECTS

Male reproductive effects

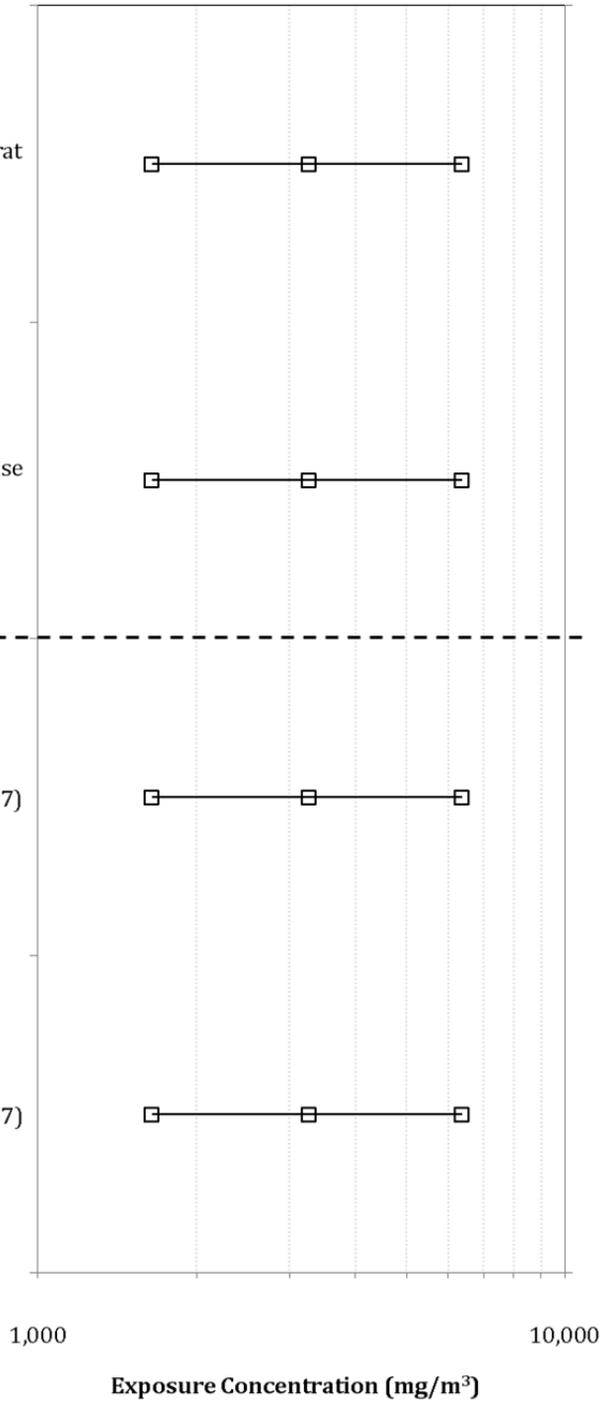
Reproductive organs or sperm; M rat
(NTP, 1997)

Reproductive organs or sperm; M mouse
(NTP, 1997)

Female reproductive effects

Estrous cycle; F rat (NTP, 1997)

Estrous cycle; F mouse (NTP, 1997)



1 **Figure 1-14. Exposure-response array of reproductive effects following**
 2 **inhalation exposure to *tert*-butanol.**

This document is a draft for review purposes only and does not constitute Agency policy.

1 **Mechanistic Evidence**

2 No mechanistic evidence for reproductive effects was identified by the literature search.

3 **Integration of Reproductive Effects**

4 At this time, information is inadequate to draw conclusions regarding reproductive toxicity.
5 The database is limited to a one-generation study ([Huntingdon Life Sciences, 2004](#); [NTP, 1995](#)). No
6 two-generation reproductive studies are available that evaluate oral or inhalation exposure. In
7 males, the only observed effect was a slight decrease in sperm motility for F0 males in the highest
8 dose group of rats treated with *tert*-butanol. This effect was not observed, however, in other studies
9 with orally treated rats and mice or in rats exposed via inhalation. In females, [NTP \(1995\)](#) reported
10 an increased length of the estrous cycle in the highest dose group of orally exposed mice. This effect
11 was not observed in similarly treated rats or in mice and rats exposed via inhalation. Furthermore,
12 no adverse effects were reported in one- and two-generation reproductive/developmental studies
13 on ETBE ([Gaoua, 2004a, b](#)), providing further support for the lack of evidence supporting
14 reproductive effects as possible human hazards following *tert*-butanol exposure.

15 **1.2.6 Other Toxicological Effects**

16 Effects other than those related to kidney, thyroid, reproductive, developmental, and
17 neurodevelopmental toxicity were observed in some of the available rodent studies; these include
18 liver and urinary bladder effects. Due to a lack of consistency in the liver effects and minimal-to-
19 mild effects with a lack of progression in urinary bladder, however, inadequate information is
20 available to draw conclusions regarding liver or urinary bladder toxicity at this time.

21 Additionally, central nervous system (CNS) effects similar to those caused by ethanol
22 (animals appearing intoxicated and having withdrawal symptoms after cessation of oral or
23 inhalation exposure) were observed. Due to study quality concerns (e.g., lack of data reporting,
24 small number of animals per treatment group), however, adequate information to assess CNS
25 toxicity is unavailable at this time. For more information on these other toxicological effects, see
26 Appendix B.3.

27 **1.3 INTEGRATION AND EVALUATION**

28 **1.3.1 Effects Other Than Cancer**

29 Kidney effects were identified as a potential human hazard of *tert*-butanol exposure based
30 on several endpoints in female rats, including suppurative inflammation, transitional epithelial
31 hyperplasia, severity and incidence of nephropathy, and increased kidney weights. These effects are
32 similar to the kidney effects observed with ETBE exposure (e.g., CPN and urothelial hyperplasia)
33 and MTBE (e.g., CPN and mineralization) ([ATSDR, 1996](#)).

34 Several effects were observed in the kidneys of rats. Based on mechanistic evidence
35 indicating that an α_{2u} -globulin-related process is operating in male rats ([Hard et al., 2011](#); [Cirvello](#)

1 [et al., 1995](#); [NTP, 1995](#); [Lindamood et al., 1992](#)), any kidney effects associated with α_{2u} -globulin
2 nephropathy are not considered relevant for human hazard identification. Because α_{2u} -globulin
3 nephropathy contributes to CPN, CPN and CPN-associated lesions in male rats were not considered
4 for human hazard identification. Furthermore, mineralization in male rats was not considered
5 clinically important to rats or relevant to human health and was not considered for dose-response
6 analysis.

7 CPN played a role in the renal tubule nephropathy observed following *tert*-butanol
8 exposure in female rats. Because female rats were not affected by α_{2u} -globulin nephropathy and the
9 individual lesions associated with the spectrum of toxicities collectively described as CPN can occur
10 in the human kidney, exacerbation of one or more of these lesions might reflect a type of injury
11 relevant to the human kidney. Effects associated with such nephropathy are considered relevant for
12 human hazard identification and suitable for derivation of reference values. Overall, the female rat
13 kidney effects (suppurative inflammation, transitional epithelial hyperplasia, increased severity of
14 CPN, and increased kidney weights) are considered the result of *tert*-butanol exposure and relevant
15 to human hazard characterization. These effects therefore are suitable for consideration for dose-
16 response analysis and derivation of reference values, in Section 2.

17 Evidence of developmental effects associated with *tert*-butanol exposure is inadequate.
18 Increased fetal loss, decreased fetal body weight, and increases in skeletal variations in exposed
19 offspring were observed following exposure to relatively high doses of *tert*-butanol during
20 gestation. These effects are similar to the developmental effects observed with MTBE exposure
21 (e.g., decreased fetal body weight and increases in skeletal variations) ([ATSDR, 1996](#)). Dams had
22 body weight losses or gains (or both), decreased food consumption, and clinical signs of
23 intoxication, however, at the same doses of *tert*-butanol causing fetal effects. Therefore,
24 determining whether *tert*-butanol exposure results in specific developmental toxicity or the fetal
25 effects are due to maternal toxicity is difficult, if not impossible, from the available data.
26 Nevertheless, selective developmental toxicity of *tert*-butanol at the higher doses examined cannot
27 be ruled out.

28 No mechanistic evidence is available for developmental effects of *tert*-butanol. There is
29 inadequate evidence of selective developmental toxicity, due to the uncertainty regarding whether
30 fetal effects were due to direct effects of *tert*-butanol or indirect effects of maternal toxicity and the
31 lack of consistency across some endpoints.

32 At this time, information is inadequate to draw conclusions regarding neurodevelopmental
33 effects as a human hazard of *tert*-butanol exposure. Although neurodevelopmental effects have
34 been observed, the studies had limitations in design or reporting, or both, and results were
35 inconsistent between studies and across dose groups, and the limited available mechanistic
36 information is unclear. Therefore, neurodevelopmental effects were not considered further for
37 dose-response analysis and derivation of reference values.

1 At this time, information is inadequate to draw conclusions regarding reproductive effects
2 as a human hazard of *tert*-butanol exposure. The only reproductive effect observed due to *tert*-
3 butanol exposure was increased length of estrous cycle ([NTP, 1995](#)) in the highest dose group of
4 orally exposed mice, and this effect was not observed in orally exposed rats or in mice and rats
5 exposed via inhalation. Further, the database was limited and contained only two oral exposure
6 studies and one subchronic inhalation study. No mechanistic or MOA information is available for
7 reproductive effects of *tert*-butanol. These effects were not considered further for dose-response
8 analysis and derivation of reference values.

9 At this time, information is inadequate to draw conclusions regarding liver or urinary
10 bladder toxicity due to lack of consistency of effects and minimal/mild effects showing a lack of
11 progression, respectively. No mechanistic evidence is available for these effects. The liver and
12 urinary bladder effects were not considered further for dose-response analysis and the derivation
13 of reference values.

14 **1.3.2 Carcinogenicity**

15 ***Summary of Evidence***

16 In B6C3F₁ mice, administration of *tert*-butanol in drinking water increased the incidence of
17 thyroid follicular cell adenomas in females and adenomas or carcinomas (only one carcinoma
18 observed) in males ([NTP, 1995](#)), as discussed in Section 1.2.2. According to EPA's thyroid tumor
19 guidance ([U.S. EPA, 1998a](#)), chemicals that produce thyroid tumors in rodents might pose a
20 carcinogenic hazard to humans.

21 In F344/N rats, administration of *tert*-butanol in drinking water increased the incidence of
22 renal tubule tumors, mostly adenomas, in males; no renal tumors in females were reported ([Hard et](#)
23 [al., 2011](#); [NTP, 1995](#)). As discussed in Section 1.2.1, some of these tumors might be associated with
24 α_{2u} -globulin nephropathy, an MOA considered specific to the male rat ([U.S. EPA, 1991a](#)). Evidence in
25 support of this hypothesized MOA includes the accumulation of hyaline droplets in renal tubule
26 cells, the presence of α_{2u} -globulin in the hyaline droplets, and additional aspects associated with
27 α_{2u} -globulin nephropathy, including linear papillary mineralization and foci of tubular hyperplasia.
28 Other evidence, however, is not supportive: The accumulation of hyaline droplets was minimal;
29 concentrations of α_{2u} -globulin were low at doses that induced tumors; and no significant necrosis
30 or cytotoxicity was associated with compensatory regenerative proliferation or induction of
31 granular casts observed within a timeframe consistent with α_{2u} -globulin-mediated nephropathy.
32 Renal tumors also are associated with chronic progressive nephropathy, but the data on CPN are
33 not coherent: Dose-response relationships for CPN, renal tubule hyperplasia, and renal tubule
34 tumors differed; in addition, CPN was nearly as severe in female rats as in male rats, yet no female
35 rats developed renal tumors. Thus, some renal tumors might be attributable to α_{2u} -globulin
36 nephropathy augmented by CPN, and some to other, yet unspecified, processes. Taken together, and

1 according to EPA's guidance on renal tumors in male rats ([U.S. EPA, 1991a](#)), renal tumors induced
2 by *tert*-butanol are relevant for human hazard identification.

3 In addition, as mentioned in Section 1.1.4, *tert*-butanol is a primary metabolite of MTBE and
4 of ETBE, two compounds tested in rats and mice that could provide supplementary information on
5 the carcinogenicity of *tert*-butanol. For MTBE, the most recent cancer evaluation by a national or
6 international health agency is from [IARC \(1999\)](#). IARC reported that oral gavage exposure in
7 Sprague-Dawley rats resulted in testicular tumors in males and lymphomas and leukemias
8 (combined) in females; inhalation exposure in male and female F344 rats resulted in renal tubule
9 adenomas in males; and inhalation exposure in male and female CD-1 mice resulted in
10 hepatocellular adenomas in females ([IARC, 1999](#)). For ETBE, a draft IRIS assessment under
11 development concurrently with this assessment reports that inhalation exposure in male and
12 female F344 rats resulted in hepatocellular tumors, primarily adenomas, in males; no significant
13 tumor increases were reported for 2-year studies by drinking water exposure in male and female
14 F344 rats or by oral gavage in male and female Sprague-Dawley rats.

15 Integration of evidence

16 This evidence leads to consideration of two hazard descriptors under EPA's cancer
17 guidelines ([U.S. EPA, 2005a](#)). The descriptor *likely to be carcinogenic to humans* is appropriate when
18 the evidence is "adequate to demonstrate carcinogenic potential to humans" but does not support
19 the descriptor *carcinogenic to humans*. One example from the cancer guidelines is "an agent that has
20 tested positive in animal experiments in more than one species, sex, strain, site, or exposure route,
21 with or without evidence of carcinogenicity in humans." *tert*-Butanol matches the conditions of this
22 example, having increased tumor incidences in two species, in both sexes, and at two sites.

23 Alternatively, the descriptor *suggestive evidence of carcinogenic potential* is appropriate
24 when the evidence raises "a concern for potential carcinogenic effects in humans" but is not
25 sufficient for a stronger conclusion. The results for *tert*-butanol raise a concern for cancer but none
26 of the effects is particularly strong. The thyroid tumors induced in male and female mice were
27 almost entirely benign. The kidney tumors resulted, in part, from an MOA that is specific to male
28 rats, while no kidney tumors occurred in female rats. In addition, while MTBE was also associated
29 with male rat kidney tumorigenesis, results between *tert*-butanol- and ETBE-associated
30 tumorigenesis in rats have little coherence. MTBE or ETBE effects following chronic oral exposure
31 in mice have not been investigated, however, so no evidence exists to evaluate the coherence of the
32 thyroid tumorigenesis observed following *tert*-butanol exposure in B6C3F₁ mice.

33 These considerations, interpreted in light of the cancer guidelines, support the conclusion,
34 *suggestive evidence of carcinogenic potential* for *tert*-butanol. Although increased tumor incidences
35 were reported for two species, two sexes, and two sites, none of the tumor responses was strong or
36 coherent with the results for ETBE, which was decisive in selecting a hazard descriptor.

37 The descriptor *suggestive evidence of carcinogenic potential* applies to all routes of human
38 exposure. Oral administration of *tert*-butanol to rats and mice induced tumors at sites beyond the

1 point of initial contact, and inhalation exposure for 13 weeks resulted in absorption and
2 distribution of *tert*-butanol into the systemic circulation, as discussed in Section 1.2.1. According to
3 the cancer guidelines, this information provides sufficient basis to apply the cancer descriptor
4 developed from oral studies to other exposure routes.

5 Biological considerations for dose–response analysis

6 Regarding hazards to bring forward to Section 2 for dose-response analysis, EPA’s guidance
7 on thyroid tumors and EPA’s cancer guidelines ([U.S. EPA, 1998a](#)) advise that, for thyroid tumors
8 resulting from thyroid-pituitary disruption, dose-response analysis should use nonlinear
9 extrapolation, in the absence of MOA information to indicate otherwise. As discussed in Section
10 1.2.2, increases in thyroid follicular cell hyperplasia in male and female mice provide partial
11 support for thyroid-pituitary disruption. Other necessary data on *tert*-butanol, however, are not
12 adequate or are not supportive. There is little correlation among thyroid, pituitary, and liver effects
13 in female mice, and no data are available to evaluate the potential for antithyroid effects in male
14 mice. Data are not adequate to conclude that thyroid hormone changes exceed the range of
15 homeostatic regulation or to evaluate effects on extrahepatic sites involved in thyroid-pituitary
16 disruption. Also, no data are available to evaluate reversibility of effects upon cessation of exposure.
17 Thus, according to EPA’s thyroid tumor guidance, concluding that the thyroid tumors result from
18 thyroid-pituitary disruption is premature, and dose-response analysis should use linear
19 extrapolation. The data are well suited to dose-response analysis, coming from an NTP study that
20 tested multiple dose levels.

21 EPA’s guidance on renal tumors in male rats ([U.S. EPA, 1991a](#)) advises that, unless the
22 relative contribution of α_{2u} -globulin nephropathy and other process can be determined, dose-
23 response analysis should not be performed. As discussed in Section 1.2.1, the available data do not
24 allow such determination, and so an analysis of kidney tumors does not appear in Section 2.

25 **1.3.3 Susceptible Populations and Lifestages for Cancer and Noncancer Outcomes**

26 No chemical-specific data that would allow for the identification of populations with
27 increased susceptibility to *tert*-butanol exposure are available. In vitro studies have implicated the
28 liver microsomal mixed function oxidase (MFO) system, namely CYP450 ([Cederbaum et al., 1983](#);
29 [Cederbaum and Cohen, 1980](#)), as playing a role in the metabolism of *tert*-butanol. One study
30 evaluated liver enzyme expression and found a dose-responsive induction of CYP2B10 following 14
31 days of *tert*-butanol exposure in female mice, with much smaller increases in the expression of
32 CYP2B9, and the thyroid hormone-metabolizing enzyme, sulfotransferase 1A1 [(SULT1A1; [Blanck
33 et al. \(2010\)](#)]. No studies, however, have identified the specific CYPs responsible for the
34 biotransformation of *tert*-butanol. Pharmacokinetic differences among the fetus, newborns,
35 children, and the aged might alter responses to chemicals compared to adults, resulting in
36 differences in health effects. In the presence of environmental chemicals, metabolic homeostasis is
37 maintained by the liver’s ability to detoxify and eliminate xenobiotics. This process is accomplished,

1 in part, by the expression of xenobiotic metabolizing enzymes and transporters (XMETs), which
2 metabolize and transport xenobiotics and determine whether exposure will result in altered
3 responses. XMETs, including various CYPs, have been found to be underexpressed in the mouse
4 fetus and neonate ([Lee et al., 2011](#)) and decreased in older mice ([Lee et al., 2011](#)) and rats ([Lee et](#)
5 [al., 2008](#)). Decreased ability to detoxify and transport *tert*-butanol out of the body could result in
6 increased susceptibility to *tert*-butanol in the young and old.

7 In regard to cancer, although children are more sensitive than adults to thyroid
8 carcinogenesis resulting from ionizing radiation, relative differences in lifestage sensitivity to
9 chemically induced thyroid carcinogenesis are unknown ([U.S. EPA, 1998a](#)). In addition, the data on
10 *tert*-butanol mutagenicity are inconclusive.

11 Collectively, evidence on *tert*-butanol is minimal for identifying susceptible populations or
12 lifestages.

2 DOSE-RESPONSE ANALYSIS

2.1 ORAL REFERENCE DOSE FOR EFFECTS OTHER THAN CANCER

The reference dose (RfD, expressed in units of mg/kg-day) is defined as an estimate (with uncertainty spanning perhaps an order of magnitude) of a daily exposure to the human population (including sensitive subgroups) that is likely to be without an appreciable risk of deleterious effects during a lifetime. The RfD can be derived from a no-observed-adverse-effect level (NOAEL), lowest-observed-adverse-effect level (LOAEL), or the 95% lower bound on the benchmark dose (BMDL), with uncertainty factors (UF values) generally applied to reflect limitations of the data used.

2.1.1 Identification of Studies and Effects for Dose-Response Analysis

EPA identified kidney effects as a potential human hazard of *tert*-butanol exposure (see Section 1.2.1). Studies within this effect category were evaluated using general study quality characteristics [as discussed in Section 4 of the Preamble; see also [U.S. EPA \(2002\)](#)] to help inform the selection of studies from which to derive toxicity values. No other hazards were identified for further consideration in the derivation of reference values.

Human studies are preferred over animal studies when quantitative measures of exposure are reported and the reported effects are determined to be associated with exposure. No human occupational or epidemiological studies of oral exposure to *tert*-butanol, however, are available.

Animal studies were evaluated to determine which studies provided (1) the most relevant routes and durations of exposure, (2) multiple exposure levels to provide information about the shape of the dose-response curve, and (3) power to detect effects at low exposure levels. The database for *tert*-butanol includes both chronic and subchronic studies showing effects in the kidney that are suitable for deriving reference values.

Kidney Toxicity

EPA identified kidney effects as a potential human hazard of *tert*-butanol-induced toxicity based on findings in female rats (summarized in Section 1.3.1). Kidney toxicity was observed across multiple chronic, subchronic, and short-term studies following oral and inhalation exposure. Kidney effects observed after chronic exposure, such as suppurative inflammation and transitional epithelial hyperplasia, could influence the ability of the kidney to filter waste. Exacerbated nephropathy also would affect kidney function. Observed changes in kidney weight also could indicate toxic effects in the kidney. For the oral *tert*-butanol database, several studies that evaluated these kidney effects are available. [Huntingdon Life Sciences \(2004\)](#) conducted a reproductive study in Sprague-Dawley rats that was of shorter duration, and reported changes in kidney weight but did

This document is a draft for review purposes only and does not constitute Agency policy.

1 not examine changes in histopathology. NTP conducted a 2-year drinking water study ([NTP, 1995](#))
2 in F344 rats that evaluated multiple doses in both males and females, and reported on all three
3 endpoints highlighted above. [NTP \(1995\)](#) was identified as most suitable for dose-response
4 assessment considering the study duration, comprehensive reporting of outcomes, and multiple
5 doses tested.

6 In the [NTP \(1995\)](#) 2-year drinking water study, female F344 rats were exposed to
7 approximate doses of 0, 180, 330, or 650 mg/kg-day. Reduced body weights and survival were
8 observed and reflected in some of the effects. Kidney effects, including changes in organ weight,
9 histopathology, or both, were observed in both sexes of rats after 13 weeks, 15 months, and 2 years
10 of treatment ([NTP, 1995](#)). Because the kidney effects in male rats are complicated by $\alpha_2\text{u}$ -globulin,
11 male kidney effects are not considered. Specific endpoints in female rats chosen for dose-response
12 analysis were absolute kidney weight, kidney suppurative inflammation, kidney transitional
13 epithelial hyperplasia, and increases in severity of nephropathy. For absolute kidney weight, data
14 from 15-month duration were selected as described in Section 1.2.1; for the other endpoints, data
15 at the longest duration of 2 years were selected.

16 **2.1.2 Methods of Analysis**

17 No biologically based dose-response models are available for *tert*-butanol. In this situation,
18 EPA evaluates a range of dose-response models thought to be consistent with underlying biological
19 processes to determine how best to empirically model the dose-response relationship in the range
20 of the observed data. The models in EPA's Benchmark Dose Software (BMDS) were applied.
21 Consistent with EPA's *Benchmark Dose Technical Guidance* ([U.S. EPA, 2012b](#)), the BMD and the
22 BMDL are estimated using a benchmark response (BMR) to represent a minimal, biologically
23 significant level of change. In the absence of information regarding the level of change considered
24 biologically significant, a BMR of 1 standard deviation from the control mean for continuous data or
25 a BMR of 10% extra risk for dichotomous data is used to estimate the BMD and BMDL and to
26 facilitate a consistent basis of comparison across endpoints, studies, and assessments. Endpoint-
27 specific BMRs, where feasible, are described further below. When modeling was feasible, the
28 estimated BMDLs were used as points of departure (PODs); the PODs are summarized in Table 2-1.
29 Details including the modeling output and graphical results for the model selected for each
30 endpoint are presented in Appendix C of the Supplemental Information to this Toxicological
31 Review. When modeling was not feasible, the study NOAEL or LOAEL was used as the POD.

32 Kidney weights were analyzed as absolute weights rather than weights relative to body
33 weight. In general, both absolute and relative kidney weight data are considered appropriate
34 endpoints for analysis ([Bailey et al., 2004](#)). In the [NTP \(1995\)](#) 2-year drinking water study, body
35 weight in exposed animals noticeably decreased relative to controls at the 15-month interim
36 sacrifice, but this decrease in body weight disproportionately influenced the measure of relative
37 kidney weight, resulting in exaggerated kidney weight changes. Because there was greater
38 confidence in the absolute kidney weight measure, it was considered more appropriate for dose-

This document is a draft for review purposes only and does not constitute Agency policy.

1 response analysis, and changes in relative kidney weights were not analyzed. A 10% relative
2 change from control was used as a BMR for absolute kidney weight, analogous to a 10% change in
3 body weight as an indicator of toxicity. A BMR of 10% extra risk was considered appropriate for the
4 quantal data on incidences of kidney suppurative inflammation and kidney transitional epithelial
5 hyperplasia. Dose-response modeling was not conducted on the increases in severity of
6 nephropathy because the data was not amenable to modeling.

7 Human equivalent doses (HEDs) for oral exposures were derived from the PODs according
8 to the hierarchy of approaches outlined in EPA's *Recommended Use of Body Weight^{3/4} as the Default
9 Method in Derivation of the Oral Reference Dose* ([U.S. EPA, 2011](#)). The preferred approach is
10 physiologically based pharmacokinetic (PBPK) modeling. Other approaches include using chemical-
11 specific information in the absence of a complete PBPK model. As discussed in Appendix B of the
12 Supplemental Information, human PBPK models for inhalation of ETBE or inhalation and dermal
13 exposure to MTBE have been published, which include *tert*-butanol submodels. A validated human
14 PBPK model for *tert*-butanol, however, is not available for extrapolating doses from animals to
15 humans. In lieu of either chemical-specific models or data to inform the derivation of human
16 equivalent oral exposures, body weight scaling to the ^{3/4} power (BW^{3/4}) is applied to extrapolate
17 toxicologically equivalent doses of orally administered agents from adult laboratory animals to
18 adult humans for the purpose of deriving an oral RfD.

19 Consistent with EPA guidance ([U.S. EPA, 2011](#)), the PODs estimated based on effects in adult
20 animals were converted to HEDs employing a standard dosimetric adjustment factor (DAF) derived
21 as follows:

22
$$\text{DAF} = (\text{BW}_a^{1/4} / \text{BW}_h^{1/4}),$$

23 where

24 BW_a = animal body weight

25 BW_h = human body weight

26 Using a standard BW_a of 0.25 kg for rats and a BW_h of 70 kg for humans ([U.S. EPA, 1988](#)),
27 the resulting DAF is 0.24 for rats. Applying this DAF to the POD identified for effects in adult rats
28 yields a POD_{HED} as follows (see Table 2-1):

29
$$\text{POD}_{\text{HED}} = \text{Laboratory animal dose (mg/kg-day)} \times \text{DAF}$$

30 Table 2-1 summarizes all PODs and the sequence of calculations leading to the derivation of
31 a human-equivalent POD for each endpoint discussed above.

1 **Table 2-1. Summary of derivations of points of departure following oral**
 2 **exposure for up to 2 years**

Endpoint and reference	Species/sex	Model ^a	BMR	BMD (mg/kg-d)	BMDL (mg/kg-d)	POD _{ADJ} ^b (mg/kg-d)	POD _{HED} ^c (mg/kg-d)
<i>Kidney</i>							
Increased absolute kidney weight at 15 months NTP (1995)	Rat/F	Exponential (M4) (constant variance)	10%	164	91	91	22
Kidney inflammation (suppurative) NTP (1995)	Rat/F	Log-probit	10%	254	200	200	48
Kidney transitional epithelial hyperplasia NTP (1995)	Rat/F	Multistage, 3-degree	10%	412	339	339	81.4
Increases in severity of nephropathy NTP (1995)	Rat/F	NA	NA	NA	NA	180 ^d	43.2

3 ^aFor modeling details, see Appendix C in Supplemental Information.

4 ^bFor studies in which animals were not dosed daily, EPA would adjust administered doses to calculate the time-
 5 weighted average daily doses prior to BMD modeling. This adjustment was not required for the [NTP \(1995\)](#) study.

6 ^cHED PODs were calculated using BW^{3/4} scaling ([U.S. EPA, 2011](#)).

7 ^dPOD calculated from the LOAEL (lowest dose tested had a significant increase in severity).

8 NA= not applicable

9 **2.1.3 Derivation of Candidate Values**

10 Consistent with EPA's *A Review of the Reference Dose and Reference Concentration Processes*
 11 [[U.S. EPA, 2002](#)]; Section 4.4.5], also described in the Preamble, five possible areas of uncertainty
 12 and variability were considered when determining the application of UF values to the PODs
 13 presented in Table 2-1. An explanation follows.

14 An intraspecies uncertainty factor, UF_H, of 10 was applied to all PODs to account for
 15 potential differences in toxicokinetics and toxicodynamics in the absence of information on the
 16 variability of response in the human population following oral exposure to *tert*-butanol ([U.S. EPA,](#)
 17 [2002](#)).

18 An interspecies uncertainty factor, UF_A, of 3 (10^{0.5} = 3.16, rounded to 3) was applied to all
 19 PODs because BW^{3/4} scaling was used to extrapolate oral doses from laboratory animals to humans.
 20 Although BW^{3/4} scaling addresses some aspects of cross-species extrapolation of toxicokinetic and
 21 toxicodynamic processes, some residual uncertainty in the extrapolation remains. In the absence of

This document is a draft for review purposes only and does not constitute Agency policy.

1 chemical-specific data to quantify this uncertainty, EPA's $BW^{3/4}$ guidance ([U.S. EPA, 2011](#))
2 recommends use of an uncertainty factor of 3.

3 A subchronic-to-chronic uncertainty factor, UF_s , of 1 was applied to all PODs because all
4 endpoints were observed following chronic exposure.

5 A LOAEL-to-NOAEL uncertainty factor, UF_L , of 1 was applied to most PODs derived because
6 the current approach is to address this factor as one of the considerations in selecting a BMR for
7 benchmark dose modeling. In this case, BMRs of a 10% relative change in absolute kidney weight, a
8 10% extra risk of kidney suppurative inflammation, and a 10% extra risk of transitional cell
9 hyperplasia were selected, assuming they represent minimal biologically significant response
10 levels. A LOAEL-to-NOAEL uncertainty factor of 3 was applied to the increases in severity of
11 nephropathy. Although a LOAEL was used to derive the POD, the severity of 1.9 was only slightly
12 higher than the control value of 1.6, indicating that the LOAEL was close to the result in controls.

13 A database uncertainty factor, UF_D , of 1 was applied to all PODs. The *tert*-butanol oral toxicity
14 database includes chronic and subchronic toxicity studies in rats and mice ([Acharya et al., 1997](#);
15 [Acharya et al., 1995](#); [NTP, 1995](#)) and developmental toxicity studies in rats and mice ([Huntingdon
16 Life Sciences, 2004](#); [Faulkner et al., 1989](#); [Daniel and Evans, 1982](#)). In the developmental studies, no
17 effects were observed at exposure levels below 1000 mg/kg-day, and effects observed at
18 ≥ 1000 mg/kg-day were accompanied by evidence of maternal toxicity. These exposure levels are
19 much higher than the PODs for kidney effects, suggesting any selective developmental toxicity is not
20 as sensitive an endpoint as kidney effects. No immunotoxicity or multigenerational reproductive
21 studies are available for *tert*-butanol. Studies on ETBE, which is rapidly metabolized to systemically
22 available *tert*-butanol, are informative for consideration of the gaps in the *tert*-butanol oral
23 database. The database for ETBE does not indicate immunotoxicity ([Banton et al., 2011](#); [Li et al.,
24 2011](#)), suggesting immune system effects would not be a sensitive target for *tert*-butanol. No
25 adverse effects were reported in one- and two-generation reproductive/developmental studies on
26 ETBE ([Gaoua, 2004a, b](#)), indicating that reproductive/developmental effects would not be a
27 sensitive target for *tert*-butanol. Additionally, a one-generation, reproductive toxicity study in rats
28 from a Toxic Substances Control Act submission ([Huntingdon Life Sciences, 2004](#)) is available for
29 *tert*-butanol. This study did not observe reproductive effects. Although the oral toxicity database for
30 *tert*-butanol has some gaps, the available data on *tert*-butanol, informed by the data on ETBE, do
31 not suggest that additional studies would lead to identification of a more sensitive endpoint or a
32 lower POD. Therefore, a database UF_D of 1 was applied.

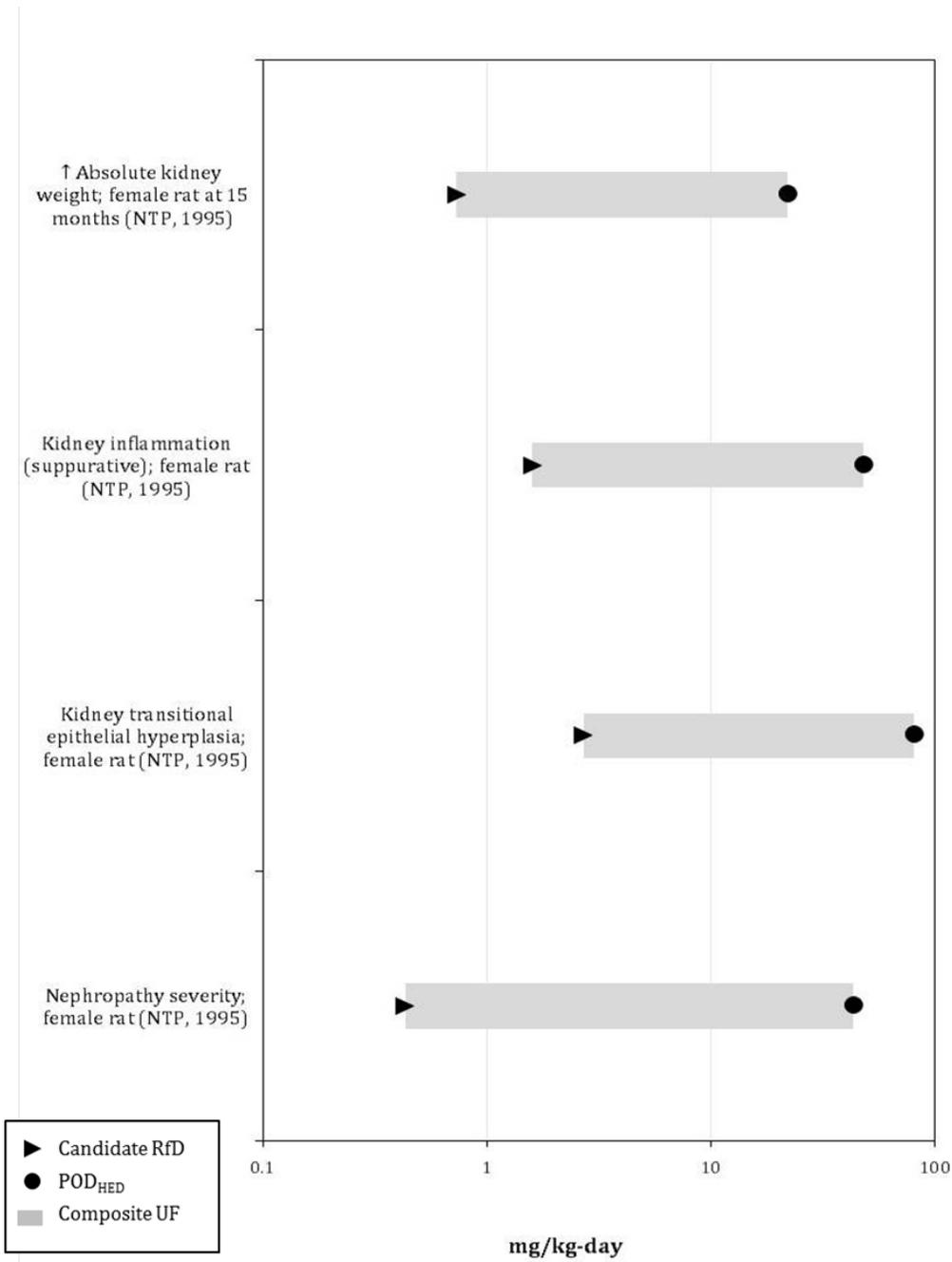
33 Table 2-2 is a continuation of Table 2-1 and summarizes the application of UF values to each
34 POD to derive a candidate value for each data set, preliminary to the derivation of the organ-
35 /system-specific RfDs. These candidate values are considered individually in selecting a
36 representative oral reference value for a specific hazard and subsequent overall RfD for *tert*-
37 butanol. Figure 2-1 presents graphically the candidate values, UF values, and POD_{HED} values, with
38 each bar corresponding to one data set described in Table 2-1 and Table 2-2.

This document is a draft for review purposes only and does not constitute Agency policy.

1 **Table 2-2. Effects and corresponding derivation of candidate values**

Endpoint and reference	POD _{HED} (mg/kg-d)	POD type	UF _A	UF _H	UF _L	UF _S	UF _D	Composite UF	Candidate value (mg/kg-d)
<i>Kidney</i>									
Increased absolute kidney weight; female rat at 15 months NTP (1995)	22	BMDL _{10%}	3	10	1	1	1	30	7×10^{-1}
Kidney inflammation (suppurative); female rat NTP (1995)	48	BMDL _{10%}	3	10	1	1	1	30	2×10^0
Kidney transitional epithelial hyperplasia; female rat NTP (1995)	81	BMDL _{10%}	3	10	1	1	1	30	3×10^0
Increases in severity of nephropathy; female rat NTP (1995)	43.2	LOAEL	3	10	3	1	1	100	4×10^{-1}

This document is a draft for review purposes only and does not constitute Agency policy.



1 **Figure 2-1. Candidate values with corresponding POD and composite UF. Each**
 2 **bar corresponds to one data set described in Table 2-1 and Table 2-2.**

This document is a draft for review purposes only and does not constitute Agency policy.

1 **2.1.4 Derivation of Organ/System-Specific Reference Doses**

2 Table 2-3 distills the candidate values from Table 2-2 into a single value for each organ or
 3 system. Organ- or system-specific RfDs are useful for subsequent cumulative risk assessments that
 4 consider the combined effect of multiple agents acting at a common site.

5 ***Kidney Toxicity***

6 For *tert*-butanol, candidate values were for several different kidney effects in female rats,
 7 spanning a range from 4×10^{-1} to 3×10^0 mg/kg-day, for an overall 7.5-fold range. To estimate an
 8 exposure level below which kidney toxicity from *tert*-butanol exposure is not expected to occur, the
 9 RfD for greater increases in severity of nephropathy in female rats (**4×10^{-1} mg/kg-day**) was
 10 selected as the kidney-specific reference dose for *tert*-butanol. This indicator of kidney toxicity is
 11 more specific and more sensitive than the relatively nonspecific endpoint of absolute kidney weight
 12 changes. Confidence in this kidney-specific RfD is medium. The POD for increases in severity of
 13 nephropathy is based on a LOAEL, and the candidate values are derived from a well-conducted
 14 long-term study, involving a sufficient number of animals per group, including both sexes, and
 15 assessing a wide range of kidney endpoints.

16 **Table 2-3. Organ/system-specific RfDs and overall RfD for *tert*-butanol**

Effect	Basis	RfD (mg/kg-day)	Study exposure description	Confidence
Kidney	Increases in severity of nephropathy NTP (1995)	4×10^{-1}	Chronic	Medium
Overall RfD	Kidney	4×10^{-1}	Chronic	Medium

17 **2.1.5 Selection of the Overall Reference Dose**

18 For *tert*-butanol, only kidney effects were identified as a hazard and carried forward for
 19 dose-response analysis; thus only one organ-/system-specific reference dose was derived.
 20 Therefore, the kidney specific RfD of (**4×10^{-1} mg/kg-day**) is the overall RfD for *tert*-butanol. This
 21 value is based on greater increases in severity of nephropathy in female rats exposed to *tert*-
 22 butanol.

23 The overall reference dose is derived to be protective of all types of effects for a given
 24 duration of exposure and is intended to protect the population as a whole, including potentially
 25 susceptible subgroups ([U.S. EPA, 2002](#)). Decisions concerning averaging exposures over time for
 26 comparison with the RfD should consider the types of toxicological effects and specific lifestages of
 27 concern. Fluctuations in exposure levels that result in elevated exposures during these lifestages
 28 could lead to an appreciable risk, even if average levels over the full exposure duration were less

1 than or equal to the RfD. In the case of *tert*-butanol, potential exists for early lifestage susceptibility
2 to *tert*-butanol exposure, as discussed in Section 1.3.3.

3 **2.1.6 Confidence Statement**

4 A confidence level of high, medium, or low is assigned to the study used to derive the RfD,
5 the overall database, and the RfD, as described in Section 4.3.9.2 of EPA's *Methods for Derivation of*
6 *Inhalation Reference Concentrations and Application of Inhalation Dosimetry* ([U.S. EPA, 1994](#)).
7 Confidence in the principal study ([NTP, 1995](#)) is high. This study was well conducted, complied
8 with Food and Drug Administration (FDA) Good Laboratory Practice (GLP) regulations, involved a
9 sufficient number of animals per dose group (including both sexes), and assessed a wide range of
10 tissues and endpoints. The toxicity database for *tert*-butanol has some gaps such as a lack of human
11 studies and limited reproductive/development toxicity data, despite the inclusion of data on ETBE,
12 a parent compound of *tert*-butanol. Therefore, the confidence in the database is medium. Reflecting
13 high confidence in the principal study and medium confidence in the database, confidence in the
14 RfD is medium.

15 **2.1.7 Previous IRIS Assessment**

16 No previous oral assessment for *tert*-butanol is available in IRIS.

17 **2.2 INHALATION REFERENCE CONCENTRATION FOR EFFECTS OTHER** 18 **THAN CANCER**

19 The inhalation RfC (expressed in units of mg/m³) is defined as an estimate (with
20 uncertainty spanning perhaps an order of magnitude) of a continuous inhalation exposure to the
21 human population (including sensitive subgroups) that is likely to be without an appreciable risk of
22 deleterious effects during a lifetime. It can be derived from a NOAEL, LOAEL, or the 95% lower
23 bound on the benchmark concentration (BMCL), with UF values generally applied to reflect
24 limitations of the data used.

25 **2.2.1 Identification of Studies and Effects for Dose-Response Analysis**

26 As for oral exposure, EPA identified kidney effects as a potential human hazard of *tert*-
27 butanol inhalation exposure (summarized in Section 1.3.1). No chronic inhalation study for *tert*-
28 butanol is available; only one 13-week study in rats and mice is available ([NTP, 1997](#)). A rat PBPK
29 model was available for both oral and inhalation exposure, which was suitable for a route-to-route
30 extrapolation ([Borghoff et al., 2016](#)). As a result, rat studies from both routes of exposure were
31 considered for dose-response analysis.

32 The database for *tert*-butanol includes oral and inhalation studies and data sets that are
33 potentially suitable for use in deriving inhalation reference values. Specifically, effects associated
34 with *tert*-butanol exposure in animals include observations of organ weight and histological
35 changes in the kidney in chronic and subchronic studies in female rats.

This document is a draft for review purposes only and does not constitute Agency policy.

1 ***Kidney Toxicity***

2 EPA identified kidney effects as a potential human hazard of *tert*-butanol exposure based on
3 findings of organ weight changes and histopathology primarily in male rats; however, the kidney
4 effects in male rats are complicated by the presence of α_{2u} -globulin. Therefore, kidney effects in
5 male rats are not considered. The kidney findings were observed across multiple chronic,
6 subchronic, and short-term studies following oral and inhalation exposure. The subchronic [NTP](#)
7 [\(1997\)](#) inhalation study is the only route-specific study available, and was carried forward for
8 further analysis. For oral studies considered for route-to-route extrapolation, see Section 2.1.1 for a
9 summary of considerations for selecting oral studies for dose-response analysis. Overall, the NTP
10 2-year drinking water study [\(NTP, 1995\)](#) was identified as the study most suitable for dose-
11 response assessment, given the study duration, comprehensive reporting of outcomes, use of
12 multiple species tested, multiple doses tested, and availability of a PBPK model for route-to-route
13 extrapolation. This study was discussed previously in Section 2.1.1 as part of the derivation of the
14 oral reference dose, so is not reviewed here again. The [NTP \(1997\)](#) subchronic inhalation study
15 shares many strengths with the 2-year drinking water study [\(NTP, 1995\)](#) and is described in more
16 detail below.

17 [NTP \(1997\)](#) was a well-designed subchronic study that evaluated the effect of *tert*-butanol
18 exposure on multiple species at multiple inhalation doses. Relative kidney weights were elevated in
19 females at 6,368 mg/m³. Few endpoints were available for consideration in the subchronic
20 inhalation study, but changes in kidney weights also were observed in the oral studies, such as the
21 [NTP \(1995\)](#) 2-year drinking water study.

22 **2.2.2 Methods of Analysis**

23 No biologically based dose-response models are available for *tert*-butanol. In this situation,
24 EPA evaluates a range of dose-response models considered consistent with underlying biological
25 processes to determine how best to model the dose-response relationship empirically in the range
26 of the observed data. Consistent with this approach, all models available in EPA's BMDS were
27 evaluated. Consistent with EPA's *Benchmark Dose Technical Guidance* [\(U.S. EPA, 2012b\)](#), the
28 benchmark dose or concentration (BMD/C) and the 95% lower confidence limit on the BMD/C
29 (BMD/CL) were estimated using a BMR of 10% change from the control mean for absolute kidney
30 weight changes (as described in Section 2.1.2). As noted in Section 2.1.2, a BMR of 10% extra risk
31 was considered appropriate for the quantal data on incidences of kidney suppurative inflammation
32 and kidney transitional epithelial hyperplasia. The estimated BMD/CLs were used as PODs. When
33 dose-response modeling was not feasible, NOAELs or LOAELs were identified and summarized in
34 Table 2-4. Further details, including the modeling output and graphical results for the best-fit
35 model for each endpoint, are found in Appendix C of the Supplemental Information.

1 **PODs from Inhalation Studies**

2 Because the RfC is applicable to a continuous lifetime human exposure but derived from
 3 animal studies featuring intermittent exposure, EPA guidance ([U.S. EPA, 1994](#)) provides
 4 mechanisms for (1) adjusting experimental exposure concentrations to a value reflecting
 5 continuous exposure duration (ADJ) and (2) determining a human equivalent concentration (HEC)
 6 from the animal exposure data. The former employs an inverse concentration-time relationship to
 7 derive a health-protective duration adjustment to time weight the intermittent exposures used in
 8 the studies. The modeled benchmark concentration (BMCL) from the inhalation study ([NTP, 1997](#))
 9 was adjusted to reflect a continuous exposure by multiplying it by (6 hours per day) ÷ (24 hours
 10 per day) and (5 days per week) ÷ (7 days per week) as follows:

11
$$\text{BMCL}_{\text{ADJ}} = \text{BMCL (mg/m}^3\text{)} \times (6 \div 24) \times (5 \div 7)$$

 12
$$= \text{BMCL (mg/m}^3\text{)} \times (0.1786)$$

13 The RfC methodology provides a mechanism for deriving an HEC from the duration-
 14 adjusted POD (BMCL_{ADJ}) determined from the animal data. The approach takes into account the
 15 extra-respiratory nature of the toxicological responses and accommodates species differences by
 16 considering blood:air partition coefficients for *tert*-butanol in the laboratory animal (rat or mouse)
 17 and humans. According to the RfC guidelines ([U.S. EPA, 1994](#)), *tert*-butanol is a Category 3 gas
 18 because extraratory effects were observed. [Kaneko et al. \(2000\)](#) measured a blood:gas
 19 partition coefficient $[(\text{H}_{\text{b/g}})_{\text{A}}]$ of 531 ± 102 for *tert*-butanol in the male Wistar rat, while [Borghoff et](#)
 20 [al. \(1996\)](#) measured a value of 481 ± 29 in male F344 rats. A blood:gas partition coefficient $[(\text{H}_{\text{b/g}})_{\text{H}}]$
 21 of 462 was reported for *tert*-butanol in humans ([Nihlén et al., 1995](#)). The calculation, $(\text{H}_{\text{b/g}})_{\text{A}} \div$
 22 $(\text{H}_{\text{b/g}})_{\text{H}}$, was used to calculate a blood:gas partition coefficient ratio to apply to the delivered
 23 concentration. Because F344 rats were used in the study, the blood:gas partition coefficient for
 24 F344 rats was used. Thus, the calculation was $481 \div 462 = 1.04$. Therefore, a ratio of 1.04 was used
 25 to calculate the HEC. This allowed a BMCL_{HEC} to be derived as follows:

26
$$\text{BMCL}_{\text{HEC}} = \text{BMCL}_{\text{ADJ}} \text{ (mg/m}^3\text{)} \times (\text{interspecies conversion})$$

 27
$$= \text{BMCL}_{\text{ADJ}} \text{ (mg/m}^3\text{)} \times (481 \div 462)$$

 28
$$= \text{BMCL}_{\text{ADJ}} \text{ (mg/m}^3\text{)} \times (1.04)$$

29 Table 2-4 summarizes the sequence of calculations leading to the derivation of a human-
 30 equivalent POD for each inhalation data set discussed above.

1 **Table 2-4. Summary of derivation of PODs following inhalation exposure**

Endpoint and reference	Species/ Sex	Model ^a	BMR	BMC ^b (mg/m ³)	BMCL ^b (mg/m ³)	POD _{ADJ} ^b (mg/m ³)	POD _{HEC} ^c (mg/m ³)
<i>Kidney</i>							
Increased absolute kidney weight NTP (1997)	Female F344 rats	No model selected ^d	10%	--	--	1137	1137

2 ^aFor modeling details, see Appendix C in Supplemental Information.

3 ^bBMCs, BMCLs, and PODs were adjusted for continuous daily exposure by multiplying by (hours exposed per day /
4 24 hr) × (days exposed per week / 7 days).

5 ^cPOD_{HEC} calculated by adjusting the POD_{ADJ} by the DAF (= 1.0, rounded from 1.04) for a Category 3 gas ([U.S. EPA, 1994](#)).

6
7 ^dBMD modeling failed to calculate a BMD value successfully (see Appendix C); POD calculated from NOAEL of
8 6368 mg/m³.

9 ***PODs from oral studies – use of PBPK model for route-to-route extrapolation***

10 A PBPK model for *tert*-butanol in rats has been modified, as described in Appendix B of the
11 Supplemental Information. Using this model, route-to-route extrapolation of the oral BMDLs or
12 LOAEL to derive inhalation PODs was performed as follows. First, the internal dose in the rat at
13 each oral BMDL or LOAEL (assuming oral exposure by a circadian drinking water pattern) was
14 estimated using the PBPK model, to derive an “internal dose BMDL or LOAEL.” Then, the inhalation
15 air concentration (assuming continuous exposure) that led to the same internal dose in the rat was
16 estimated using the PBPK model. The resulting POD then was converted to a human equivalent
17 concentration POD (POD_{HEC}) using the methodology previously described in the section, *PODs from*
18 *inhalation studies*:

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{POD}_{\text{HEC}} &= \text{POD (mg/m}^3\text{)} \times (\text{interspecies conversion}) \\
 &= \text{POD (mg/m}^3\text{)} \times (481 \div 462) \\
 &= \text{POD (mg/m}^3\text{)} \times (1.04)
 \end{aligned}$$

22 A critical decision in the route-to-route extrapolation is selection of the internal dose metric
23 that establishes “equivalent” oral and inhalation exposures. For *tert*-butanol-induced kidney effects,
24 the two options are the concentration of *tert*-butanol in blood and the rate of *tert*-butanol
25 metabolism. Note that using the kidney concentration of *tert*-butanol will lead to the same route-to-
26 route extrapolation relationship as *tert*-butanol in blood because the distribution from blood to
27 kidney is independent of route. Data are not available that suggest that metabolites of *tert*-butanol
28 mediate its renal toxicity. Without evidence that suggests otherwise, *tert*-butanol is assumed the
29 active toxicological agent. Therefore, the concentration of *tert*-butanol in blood was selected as the
30 dose metric.

1 Table 2-5 summarizes the sequence of calculations leading to the derivation of a human-
 2 equivalent inhalation POD from each oral data set discussed above.

3 **Table 2-5. Summary of derivation of inhalation points of departure derived**
 4 **from route-to-route extrapolation from oral exposures**

Endpoint and reference	Species/sex	BMR	BMDL (mg/kg-d)	Internal dose ^a (mg/L)	Equivalent POD ^b (mg/m ³)	Equivalent POD _{HEC} ^c (mg/m ³)
<i>Kidney</i>						
Mean absolute kidney weight at 15 months NTP (1995)	Rat/F	10%	91	21.5	238.9	248
Kidney inflammation (suppurative) NTP (1995)	Rat/F	10%	200	61.9	523.7	545
Kidney transitional epithelial hyperplasia NTP (1995)	Rat/F	10%	339	127	883.9	919
	Species/sex	POD (LOAEL; mg/kg-d)		Internal dose ^a (mg/L)	Equivalent POD ^b (mg/m ³)	Equivalent POD _{HEC} ^c (mg/m ³)
Increases in severity of nephropathy NTP (1995)	Rat/F	180		53.6	471.8	491

5 ^aAverage rodent blood concentration of *tert*-butanol under circadian drinking water ingestion at the BMDL.

6 ^bContinuous inhalation equivalent concentration that leads to the same average blood concentration of *tert*-butanol
 7 as circadian drinking water ingestion at the BMDL in the rat.

8 ^cContinuous inhalation human equivalent concentration that leads to the same average blood concentration of *tert*-
 9 butanol as continuous oral exposure at the BMDL. Calculated as the rodent POD x 1.04.

10 **2.2.3 Derivation of Candidate Values**

11 In EPA’s *A Review of the Reference Dose and Reference Concentration Processes* [([U.S. EPA, 2002](#));
 12 Section 4.4.5], also described in the Preamble, five possible areas of uncertainty and
 13 variability were considered. Several PODs for the candidate inhalation values were derived using a
 14 route-to-route extrapolation from the PODs estimated from the chronic oral toxicity study in rats
 15 ([NTP, 1995](#)) in the derivation of the oral RfD (Section 1). With the exception of the subchronic
 16 inhalation ([NTP, 1997](#)) study, the UF values selected and applied to PODs derived from the chronic
 17 oral ([NTP, 1995](#)) study for route-to-route extrapolation are the same as those for the RfD for *tert*-
 18 butanol (see Section 2.1.3). The model used to perform this route-to-route extrapolation is a well-
 19 characterized model considered appropriate for the purposes of this assessment.

20 For the PODs derived from the subchronic inhalation ([NTP, 1997](#)) study, a UF_s of 10 was
 21 applied to account for extrapolation from subchronic-to-chronic duration.

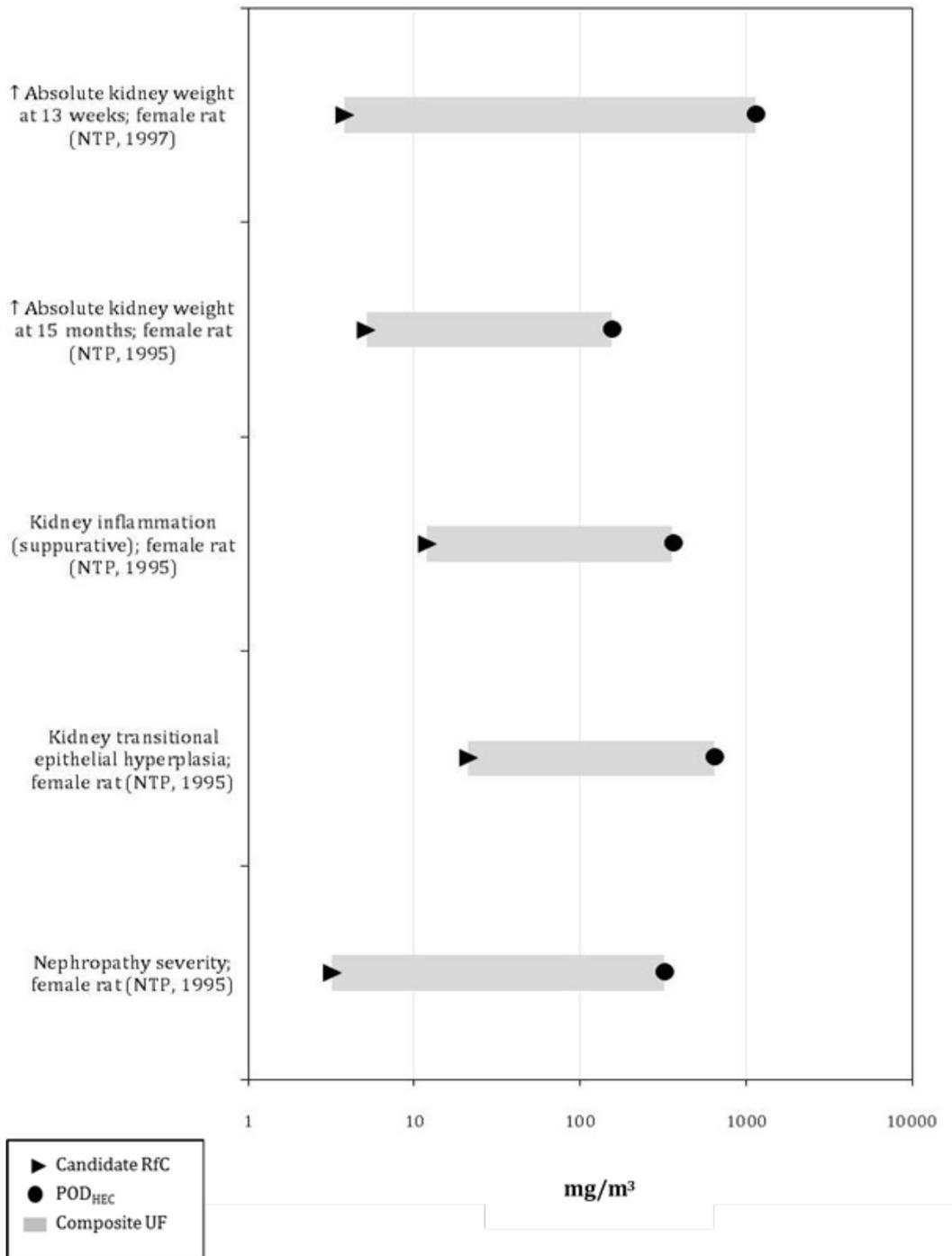
1 Table 2-6 is a continuation of Table 2-4 and Table 2-5, and summarizes the application of UF
 2 values to each POD to derive a candidate value for each data set. The candidate values presented in
 3 the table below are preliminary to the derivation of the organ-/system-specific reference values.
 4 These candidate values are considered individually in the selection of a representative reference
 5 value for inhalation for a specific hazard and subsequent overall RfC for *tert*-butanol.

6 Figure 2-2 presents graphically the candidate values, UF values, and POD_{HEC} values, with
 7 each bar corresponding to one data set described in Table 2-4, Table 2-5, and Table 2-6.

8 **Table 2-6. Effects and corresponding derivation of candidate values**

Endpoint (sex and species) and reference	POD _{HEC} ^a (mg/m ³)	POD type	UF _A	UF _H	UF _L	UF _S	UF _D	Composite UF	Candidate value (mg/m ³)
<i>Kidney</i>									
Increased absolute kidney weight at 13 weeks; female rat NTP (1997)	1137	NOAEL	3	10	1	10	1	300	4 × 10 ⁰
Increased absolute kidney weight at 15 months; female rat NTP (1995)	248	BMCL _{10%}	3	10	1	1	1	30	8 × 10 ⁰ *
Kidney inflammation (suppurative); female rat NTP (1995)	546	BMCL _{10%}	3	10	1	1	1	30	2 × 10 ¹ *
Kidney transitional epithelial hyperplasia; female rat NTP (1995)	920	BMCL _{10%}	3	10	1	1	1	30	3 × 10 ¹ *
Increases in severity of nephropathy; female rat NTP (1995)	491	LOAEL	3	10	3	1	1	100	5 × 10 ⁰ *

9 *These candidate values are derived using route-to-route extrapolated PODs based on NTP's chronic drinking
 10 water study.



1 **Figure 2-2. Candidate RfC values with corresponding POD and composite UF.**

This document is a draft for review purposes only and does not constitute Agency policy.

1 **2.2.4 Derivation of Organ/System-Specific Reference Concentrations**

2 Table 2-7 distills the candidate values from Table 2-6 into a single value for the kidney.
 3 Organ-/system-specific reference values can be useful for subsequent cumulative risk assessments
 4 that consider the combined effect of multiple agents acting at a common site.

5 ***Kidney Toxicity***

6 For the derivation of candidate values, whether PODs from the subchronic inhalation study
 7 of [NTP \(1997\)](#) would provide a better basis than the route-to-route extrapolated PODs based on the
 8 chronic oral study of [NTP \(1995\)](#) must be considered. Candidate values were derived for increased
 9 kidney weight observed in the subchronic inhalation study ([NTP, 1997](#)) and several kidney effects
 10 observed in the chronic oral study ([NTP, 1995](#)) in female rat, spanning a range from 44×10^0 to
 11 3×10^1 mg/m³, for an overall 7-fold range. To estimate an exposure level below which kidney
 12 toxicity from *tert*-butanol exposure is not expected to occur, the RfC for increased increases in
 13 severity of nephropathy in female rats (5×10^0 mg/m³) was selected as the kidney-specific RfC for
 14 *tert*-butanol, consistent with the selection of the kidney-specific RfD (see Section 2.1.4). This
 15 endpoint is based on a longer (chronic) duration and a more specific and sensitive indicator of
 16 kidney toxicity than the relatively nonspecific endpoint of kidney weight change. Confidence in this
 17 kidney-specific RfC is medium. The POD for increases in severity of nephropathy is based on a
 18 LOAEL, and the candidate values are derived from a well-conducted long-term study, involving a
 19 sufficient number of animals per group, including both sexes, and assessing a wide range of kidney
 20 endpoints, and availability of a PBPK model for route-to-route extrapolation.

21 **Table 2-7. Organ-/system-specific RfCs and overall RfC for *tert*-butanol**

Effect	Basis	RfC (mg/m ³)*	Study exposure description	Confidence
Kidney	Increases in severity of nephropathy (NTP, 1995)	5×10^0	Chronic	Medium
Overall RfC	Kidney	5×10^0	Chronic	Medium

22 *Derived from oral study, by route-to-route extrapolation.

23 **2.2.5 Selection of the Overall Reference Concentration**

24 For *tert*-butanol, kidney effects were identified as the primary hazard; thus, a single
 25 organ-/system-specific RfC was derived. The kidney-specific RfC of 5×10^0 mg/m³ is selected as
 26 the overall RfC, representing an estimated exposure level below which deleterious effects from
 27 *tert*-butanol exposure are not expected to occur.

28 The overall RfC is derived to be protective of all types of effects for a given duration of
 29 exposure and is intended to protect the population as a whole, including potentially susceptible
 30 subgroups ([U.S. EPA, 2002](#)). Decisions concerning averaging exposures over time for comparison

This document is a draft for review purposes only and does not constitute Agency policy.

1 with the RfC should consider the types of toxicological effects and specific lifestages of concern.
2 Fluctuations in exposure levels that result in elevated exposures during these lifestages could lead
3 to an appreciable risk, even if average levels over the full exposure duration were less than or equal
4 to the RfC. In the case of *tert*-butanol, the potential exists for early lifestage susceptibility to *tert*-
5 butanol exposure, as discussed in Section 1.3.3.

6 **2.2.6 Confidence Statement**

7 A confidence level of high, medium, or low is assigned to the study used to derive the RfC,
8 the overall database, and the RfC itself, as described in Section 4.3.9.2 of EPA's *Methods for*
9 *Derivation of Inhalation Reference Concentrations and Application of Inhalation Dosimetry* ([U.S. EPA,](#)
10 [1994](#)). A PBPK model was used to perform a route-to-route extrapolation to determine a POD for
11 the derivation of the RfC from the [NTP \(1995\)](#) oral study and corresponding critical effect.
12 Confidence in the principal study ([NTP, 1995](#)) is high. This study was well conducted, complied
13 with FDA GLP regulations, involved a sufficient number of animals per group (including both
14 sexes), and assessed a wide range of tissues and endpoints. Although the toxicity database for *tert*-
15 butanol contains some gaps, these areas are partially informed by the data on ETBE, a parent
16 compound of *tert*-butanol. Therefore, the confidence in the database is medium. Reflecting high
17 confidence in the principal study, medium confidence in the database, and minimal uncertainty
18 surrounding the application of the modified PBPK model for the purposes of a route-to-route
19 extrapolation, the overall confidence in the RfC for *tert*-butanol is medium.

20 **2.2.7 Previous IRIS Assessment**

21 No previous inhalation assessment for *tert*-butanol is available in IRIS.

22 **2.2.8 Uncertainties in the Derivation of the Reference Dose and Reference Concentration**

23 The following discussion identifies uncertainties associated with the RfD and RfC for
24 *tert*-butanol. To derive the RfD, the UF approach ([U.S. EPA, 2000a, 1994](#)) was applied to a POD
25 based on kidney toxicity in rats treated chronically. UF values were applied to the POD to account
26 for extrapolating from an animal bioassay to human exposure, and the likely existence of a diverse
27 human population of varying susceptibilities. These extrapolations are carried out with default
28 approaches, given the lack of data to inform individual steps. To derive the RfC, this same approach
29 was applied, but a PBPK model was used to extrapolate from oral to inhalation exposure.

30 The database for *tert*-butanol contains no human data on adverse health effects from
31 subchronic or chronic exposure, and the PODs were calculated from data on the effects of *tert*-
32 butanol reported by studies in rats. The database for *tert*-butanol exposure includes one lifetime
33 bioassay, several reproductive/developmental studies, and several subchronic oral studies.

34 Although the database is adequate for reference value derivation, uncertainty is associated
35 with the lack of a comprehensive multigeneration reproductive toxicity study. Additionally, only

This document is a draft for review purposes only and does not constitute Agency policy.

1 subchronic and short-term inhalation studies have been conducted, and no chronic inhalation
2 studies are available. Developmental studies identified significant increases in fetal loss, decreases
3 in fetal body weight, and possible increases in skeletal variations in exposed offspring or pups.
4 Effects were not always consistent across exposure routes, however, and maternal toxicity was
5 present whenever developmental effects were observed.

6 The toxicokinetic and toxicodynamic differences for *tert*-butanol between the animal
7 species in which the POD was derived and humans are unknown. The *tert*-butanol database lacks
8 an adequate model that would inform potential interspecies differences (A limited data set exists
9 for *tert*-butanol appearing as a metabolite from ETBE exposure in humans, but none for direct
10 exposure to *tert*-butanol.) Generally, rats were found to appear more susceptible than mice, and
11 males appear more susceptible than females to *tert*-butanol toxicity. The underlying mechanistic
12 basis of these apparent differences, however, is not understood. Most importantly, which animal
13 species or sexes might be more comparable to humans is unknown.

14 Another uncertainty to consider relates to the MOA analysis conducted for the kidney
15 effects. The assessment concluded that *tert*-butanol is a weak inducer of α_{2u} -globulin, which is
16 operative in male kidney tumors; therefore, noncancer effects related to α_{2u} -globulin were
17 considered not relevant for hazard identification and, therefore, not suitable for dose response
18 consideration. If this conclusion was incorrect and the noncancer effects characterized in this
19 assessment as being related to α_{2u} -globulin were relevant to humans, the RfD and RfC values could
20 underestimate toxicity. The assessment also used noncancer effects related to CPN in derivation of
21 the reference values. If noncancer effects characterized in this assessment as being related to CPN
22 were not relevant to humans, the RfD value (0.4 mg/kg-day) could be slightly overestimate toxicity
23 compared with an alternative endpoint, increased absolute kidney weight (0.7 mg/kg-day), while
24 the RfC value would be similar (5 mg/m³ compared with 4 mg/m³).

25 **2.3 ORAL SLOPE FACTOR FOR CANCER**

26 The oral slope factor (OSF) is a plausible upper bound on the estimate of risk per
27 mg/kg-day of oral exposure. The OSF can be multiplied by an estimate of lifetime exposure (in
28 mg/kg-day) to estimate the lifetime cancer risk.

29 **2.3.1 Analysis of Carcinogenicity Data**

30 As noted in Section 1.3.2, there is “suggestive evidence of carcinogenic potential” for *tert*-
31 butanol. The *Guidelines for Carcinogen Risk Assessment* ([U.S. EPA, 2005a](#)) state:

32 When there is suggestive evidence, the Agency generally would not attempt a dose-
33 response assessment, as the nature of the data generally would not support one; however
34 when the evidence includes a well-conducted study, quantitative analysis may be useful for
35 some purposes, for example, providing a sense of the magnitude and uncertainty of
36 potential risks, ranking potential hazards, or setting research priorities.

This document is a draft for review purposes only and does not constitute Agency policy.

1 No human data relevant to an evaluation of the carcinogenicity of *tert*-butanol were
2 available. The cancer descriptor was based on the 2-year drinking water study in rats and mice by
3 ([NTP, 1995](#)), which reported renal tumors in male rats and thyroid tumors in both male and female
4 mice. This study was considered suitable for dose-response analysis. It was conducted in
5 accordance with FDA GLP regulations, and all aspects were subjected to retrospective quality
6 assurance audits. The study included histological examinations for tumors in many different
7 tissues, contained three exposure levels and controls, contained adequate numbers of animals per
8 dose group (~50/sex/group), treated animals for up to 2 years, and included detailed reporting of
9 methods and results. Additionally, the renal tumors were reexamined by a Pathology Working
10 Group ([Hard et al., 2011](#)).

11 Based on a mode of action analysis, the α_{2u} -globulin process was concluded to be at least
12 partially responsible for the male rat renal tumors, in addition to other, unknown, processes.
13 Because the relative contribution of each process to tumor formation cannot be determined ([U.S.](#)
14 [EPA, 1991a](#)), the male rat renal tumors are not considered suitable for quantitative analysis.
15 Conversely, the mouse thyroid tumors are suitable for dose-response analysis and unit risk
16 estimation, as described in Section 1.3.2.

17 **2.3.2 Dose-Response Analysis—Adjustments and Extrapolations Methods**

18 The EPA *Guidelines for Carcinogen Risk Assessment* ([U.S. EPA, 2005a](#)) recommend that
19 determining the method to use for characterizing and quantify cancer risk from a chemical be
20 based on what is known about the MOA of the carcinogen and the shape of the cancer dose-
21 response curve. EPA uses a two-step approach that distinguishes analysis of the observed dose-
22 response data from inferences about lower doses ([U.S. EPA, 2005a](#)). Within the observed range, the
23 preferred approach is to use modeling to incorporate a wide range of data into the analysis, such as
24 through a biologically based model, if supported by substantial data. Without a biologically based
25 model, as in the case of *tert*-butanol, a standard model is used for curve fitting the data and
26 estimating a POD. EPA uses the multistage model in IRIS dose-response analyses for cancer
27 ([Gehlhaus et al., 2011](#)) because it parallels the multistage carcinogenic process and fits a broad
28 array of dose-response patterns.

29 The second step, extrapolation to lower exposures from the POD, considers what is known
30 about the modes of action for each effect. As above, a biologically based model is preferred ([U.S.](#)
31 [EPA, 2005a](#)). Otherwise, linear low-dose extrapolation is recommended if the MOA of
32 carcinogenicity is mutagenic or has not been established ([U.S. EPA, 2005a](#)). For *tert*-butanol, the
33 mode(s) of carcinogenic action for thyroid follicular cell tumors has not been established (see
34 Section 1.3.2). Therefore, linear low-dose extrapolation was used to estimate human carcinogenic
35 risk.

36 The dose-response modeling used administered dose because a PBPK model to characterize
37 internal dosimetry in mice was not available. For the analysis of male mice thyroid tumors, the
38 incidence data were adjusted to account for the increased mortality in high-dose male mice, relative
This document is a draft for review purposes only and does not constitute Agency policy.

1 to the other groups, that reduced the number of mice at risk for developing tumors. The Poly-3
2 method ([Bailer and Portier, 1988](#)) was used to estimate the number at risk of developing tumors,
3 by weighting the length of time each animal was on study (details in Appendix C of the
4 Supplemental Information). This method was not applied to the female mice data because a
5 difference in survival with increasing exposure was not appreciable and only one tumor, in the
6 high-dose group, occurred before study termination.

7 The data modeled and other details of the modeling are provided in Appendix C. The BMDs
8 and BMDLs recommended for each data set are summarized in Table 2-8. The modeled *tert*-butanol
9 PODs were scaled to HEDs according to EPA guidance ([U.S. EPA, 2011, 2005a](#)). In particular, the
10 BMDL was converted to an HED by assuming that doses in animals and humans are toxicologically
11 equivalent when scaled by body weight raised to the ³/₄ power. Standard body weights of 0.025 kg
12 for mice and 70 kg for humans were used ([U.S. EPA, 1988](#)). The following formula was used for the
13 conversion of oral BMDL to oral HED for mouse endpoints:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{HED in mg/kg-day} &= (\text{BMDL in mg/kg-day}) \times (\text{animal body weight}/70)^{1/4} \\ &= (\text{BMDL in mg/kg-day}) \times 0.14 \end{aligned}$$

16 PODs for estimating low-dose risk were identified at doses at the lower end of the observed
17 data, corresponding to 10% extra risk in female mice and 5% extra risk in male mice.

18 **2.3.3 Derivation of the Oral Slope Factor**

19 The PODs estimated for each tumor data set are summarized in Table 2-8. The lifetime oral
20 cancer slope factor for humans is defined as the slope of the line from the lower 95% bound on the
21 exposure at the POD to the control response (slope factor = BMR/BMDL_{BMR} = 0.1/BMDL₁₀). This
22 slope represents a plausible upper bound on the true population average risk. Using linear
23 extrapolation from the BMDL₁₀, human equivalent oral slope factors were derived for male and
24 female mice and are listed in Table 2-8.

25 The oral slope factor based on the incidence of thyroid follicular cell adenomas in female
26 mice was 5×10^4 per mg/kg-day. Despite high mortality in high-dose male mice, estimating slope
27 factors using the poly-3 method was feasible for addressing competing risks. Whether using the full
28 data set (including the only thyroid follicular cell carcinoma observed at the highest dose) or
29 omitting the high-dose group altogether (under the assumption that mortality in this group was too
30 extensive to interpret the results), oral slope factors based on the incidence of thyroid follicular cell
31 adenomas or carcinomas in male mice were similar when rounded to one significant digit— 5×10^{-4}
32 per mg/kg-day or 6×10^{-4} per mg/kg-day, respectively.

33 The recommended slope factor for lifetime oral exposure to *tert*-butanol is
34 **5×10^{-4} per mg/kg-day**, based on the thyroid follicular cell adenoma or carcinoma response in
35 male or female B6C3F₁ mice. This slope factor should not be used with exposures exceeding
36 1,400 mg/kg-day, the highest POD from the two data sets, because above this level the cancer risk

This document is a draft for review purposes only and does not constitute Agency policy.

1 might not increase linearly with exposure. The slope of the linear extrapolation from the central
 2 estimate BMD_{10HED} derived from the female mouse data set is $0.1/[0.14 \times (2002 \text{ mg/kg-day})] =$
 3 4×10^{-4} per mg/kg-day.

4 **Table 2-8. Summary of the oral slope factor derivation**

Tumor	Species/sex	Selected model	BMR	BMD (mg/kg-d)	POD = BMDL (mg/kg-d)	BMDL _{HED} ^a (mg/kg-d)	Slope factor ^b (mg/kg-day) ⁻¹
Thyroid follicular cell adenoma	B6C3F ₁ mouse/Female	3° Multistage	10%	2002	1437	201	5×10^{-4}
Thyroid follicular cell adenoma or carcinoma	B6C3F ₁ mouse/Male	All dose groups: 1° Multistage	5% ^c	1788	787	110	5×10^{-4}
		High dose omitted: 2° Multistage	5% ^c	1028	644	90	6×10^{-4}

5 ^aHED PODs were calculated using BW^{3/4} scaling ([U.S. EPA, 2011](#)).

6 ^bHuman equivalent slope factor = $0.1/\text{BMDL}_{10\text{HED}}$; see Appendix C of the Supplemental Information for details of
 7 modeling results.

8 ^cBecause the observed responses were <10%, a BMR of 5% was used to represent the observed response range for
 9 low-dose extrapolation; human equivalent slope factor = $0.05/\text{BMDL}_{5\text{HED}}$.

10 **2.3.4 Uncertainties in the Derivation of the Oral Slope Factor**

11 There is uncertainty when extrapolating data from animals to estimate potential cancer
 12 risks to human populations from exposure to *tert*-butanol.

13 Table 2-9 summarizes several uncertainties that could affect the oral slope factor. There are
 14 no other chronic studies to replicate these findings or that examined other animal models, no data
 15 in humans to confirm a cancer response in general or the specific tumors observed in the [NTP](#)
 16 [\(1995\)](#) bioassay, and no other data (e.g., MOA) to support alternative approaches for deriving the
 17 oral slope factor.

1 **Table 2-9. Summary of uncertainties in the derivation of the oral slope factor**
 2 **for tert-butanol**

Consideration and impact on cancer risk value	Decision	Justification
<p>Selection of tumor type and relevance to humans: Mouse thyroid tumors are the basis for estimating human cancer risk, as the fraction of rat kidney tumors not attributed to the male rat specific $\alpha_2\mu$-globulin process could not be determined. Alternatively, quantifying rat kidney tumors could \uparrow slope factor to 1×10^{-2} mg/kg-day (see Appendix C, Supplemental Information)</p>	<p>Thyroid tumors in female and male mice were selected U.S. EPA (1998a), U.S. EPA (1991a)</p>	<p>MOA data suggested that mouse thyroid tumors were relevant to humans. Quantitation of thyroid tumors in male mice, which was impacted only slightly by high mortality in the high-dose group, supports the estimate based on female mice.</p>
<p>Selection of data set: No other studies are available</p>	<p>NTP (1995), oral (drinking water) study, was selected to derive cancer risks for humans</p>	<p>NTP (1995), the only chronic bioassay available, was a well-conducted study. Additional bioassays might add support to the findings, facilitate determination of what fraction of kidney tumors are not attributable to the $\alpha_2\mu$-globulin process, or provide results for different (possibly lower) doses, which would affect (possibly increase) the oral slope factor.</p>
<p>Selection of dose metric: Alternatives could \downarrow or \uparrow slope factor</p>	<p>Used administered dose</p>	<p>For mice, PBPK-estimated internal doses could impact the OSF value for thyroid tumors if the carcinogenic moiety is not proportional to administered dose, but no PBPK model was available, and no information is available to suggest if any metabolites elicit carcinogenic effects.</p>
<p>Interspecies extrapolation of dosimetry and risk: Alternatives could \downarrow or \uparrow slope factor (e.g., 3.5-fold \downarrow [scaling by body weight] or \uparrow 2-fold [scaling by BW 2/3])</p>	<p>Default approach of body weight^{3/4} was used</p>	<p>No data to suggest an alternative approach for tert-butanol. Because the dose metric was not an area under the curve, BW^{3/4} scaling was used to calculate equivalent cumulative exposures for estimating equivalent human risks. Although the true human correspondence is unknown, this overall approach is expected neither to over- or underestimate human equivalent risks.</p>
<p>Dose-response modeling: Alternatives could \downarrow or \uparrow slope factor</p>	<p>Used multistage dose-response model to derive a BMD and BMDL</p>	<p>No biologically based models for tert-butanol were available. The multistage model has biological support and is the model most consistently used in EPA cancer assessments.</p>

This document is a draft for review purposes only and does not constitute Agency policy.

Consideration and impact on cancer risk value	Decision	Justification
Low-dose extrapolation: ↓ cancer risk estimate would be expected with the application of nonlinear low-dose extrapolation	Linear extrapolation of risk in low-dose region used U.S. EPA (1998a)	Linear low-dose extrapolation for agents without a known MOA is supported (U.S. EPA, 2005a) and recommended for rodent thyroid tumors arising from an unknown MOA (U.S. EPA, 1998a).
Statistical uncertainty at POD: ↓ oral slope factor 1.4-fold if BMD used as the POD rather than BMDL	BMDL (preferred approach for calculating slope factor)	Limited size of bioassay results in sampling variability; lower bound is 95% CI on administered exposure at 10% extra risk of thyroid tumors.
Sensitive subpopulations: ↑ oral slope factor to unknown extent	No sensitive populations have been identified	No chemical-specific data are available to determine the range of human toxicodynamic variability or sensitivity, including the susceptibility of children. Because determination of a mutagenic MOA is not known, an age-specific adjustment factor is not applied.

1 **2.3.5 Previous IRIS Assessment: Oral Slope Factor**

2 No previous cancer assessment for *tert*-butanol is available in IRIS.

3 **2.4 INHALATION UNIT RISK FOR CANCER**

4 The carcinogenicity assessment provides information on the carcinogenic hazard potential
5 of the substance in question, and quantitative estimates of risk from oral and inhalation exposure
6 can be derived. Quantitative risk estimates can be derived from the application of a low-dose
7 extrapolation procedure. If derived, the inhalation unit risk (IUR) is a plausible upper bound on the
8 estimate of risk per µg/m³ air breathed.

9 No chronic inhalation exposure studies to *tert*-butanol are available. Lifetime oral exposure
10 has been associated with increased renal tubule adenomas and carcinoma in male F344 rats,
11 increased thyroid follicular cell adenomas in female B6C3F₁ mice, and increased thyroid follicular
12 cell adenomas and carcinomas in male B6C3F₁ mice. Because only a rat PBPK model exists,
13 however, route-to-route extrapolation cannot be performed for thyroid tumors in mice at this time.
14 The [NTP \(1995\)](#) drinking water study in rats and mice was the only chronic bioassay available for
15 dose-response analysis. Still, the rat PBPK model and kidney tumors from the [NTP \(1995\)](#) drinking
16 water study were not used for route-to-route extrapolation because enough information to
17 determine the relative contribution of α_{2u}-globulin nephropathy and other processes to the overall
18 renal tumor response ([U.S. EPA, 1991a](#)) is not available.

19 **2.4.1 Previous IRIS Assessment: Inhalation Unit Risk**

20 An inhalation cancer assessment for *tert*-butanol was not previously available on IRIS.

This document is a draft for review purposes only and does not constitute Agency policy.

1 **2.5 APPLICATION OF AGE-DEPENDENT ADJUSTMENT FACTORS**

2 As discussed in the *Supplemental Guidance for Assessing Susceptibility from Early-Life Exposure to*
3 *Carcinogens* ([U.S. EPA, 2005b](#)), either default or chemical-specific age-dependent adjustment
4 factors (ADAFs) are recommended to account for early-life exposure to carcinogens that act
5 through a mutagenic MOA. Because chemical-specific lifestage susceptibility data for cancer are not
6 available, and because the MOA for *tert*-butanol carcinogenicity is not known (see Section 1.3.2),
7 application of ADAFs is not recommended.

REFERENCES

- 1 [Acharya, S; Mehta, K; Rodrigues, S; Pereira, J; Krishnan, S; Rao, CV.](#) (1995). Administration of
2 subtoxic doses of t-butyl alcohol and trichloroacetic acid to male Wistar rats to study the
3 interactive toxicity. *Toxicol Lett.* 80: 97-104. [http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/0378-](http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/0378-4274(95)03340-Q)
4 [4274\(95\)03340-Q](http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/0378-4274(95)03340-Q).
- 5 [Acharya, S; Mehta, K; Rodrigues, S; Pereira, J; Krishnan, S; Rao, CV.](#) (1997). A histopathological study
6 of liver and kidney in male Wistar rats treated with subtoxic doses of t-butyl alcohol and
7 trichloroacetic acid. *Exp Toxicol Pathol.* 49: 369-373. [http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/S0940-](http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/S0940-2993(97)80119-4)
8 [2993\(97\)80119-4](http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/S0940-2993(97)80119-4).
- 9 [Amberg, A; Rosner, E; Dekant, W.](#) (1999). Biotransformation and kinetics of excretion of methyl-
10 tert-butyl ether in rats and humans. *Toxicol Sci.* 51: 1-8.
- 11 [Amberg, A; Rosner, E; Dekant, W.](#) (2000). Biotransformation and kinetics of excretion of ethyl tert-
12 butyl ether in rats and humans. *Toxicol Sci.* 53: 194-201.
13 <http://dx.doi.org/10.1093/toxsci/53.2.194>.
- 14 [ARCO](#) (ARCO Chemical Company). (1983). Toxicologist's report on metabolism and
15 pharmacokinetics of radiolabeled TBA 534 tertiary butyl alcohol with cover letter dated
16 03/24/1994. (8EHQ86940000263). Newton Square, PA.
- 17 [ATSDR](#) (Agency for Toxic Substances and Disease Registry). (1996). Toxicological profile for
18 methyl-tert-butyl ether [ATSDR Tox Profile]. Atlanta, GA: U.S. Department of Health and
19 Human Services, Public Health Service. <http://www.atsdr.cdc.gov/ToxProfiles/tp91.pdf>.
- 20 [Bailer, AJ; Portier, CJ.](#) (1988). Effects of treatment-induced mortality and tumor-induced mortality
21 on tests for carcinogenicity in small samples. *Biometrics.* 44: 417-431.
- 22 [Bailey, SA; Zidell, RH; Perry, RW.](#) (2004). Relationships between organ weight and body/brain
23 weight in the rat: What is the best analytical endpoint? *Toxicol Pathol.* 32: 448-466.
24 <http://dx.doi.org/10.1080/01926230490465874>.
- 25 [Bale, AS; Lee, JS.](#) (2016). An overview of butanol-induced developmental neurotoxicity and the
26 potential mechanisms related to these observed effects [Review]. *Neurotoxicol Teratol.* 53:
27 33-40. <http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.ntt.2015.11.006>.
- 28 [Banton, MI; Peachee, VL; White, KL; Padgett, EL.](#) (2011). Oral subchronic immunotoxicity study of
29 ethyl tertiary butyl ether in the rat. *J Immunotoxicol.* 8: 298-304.
30 <http://dx.doi.org/10.3109/1547691X.2011.598480>.
- 31 [Bernauer, U; Amberg, A; Scheutzow, D; Dekant, W.](#) (1998). Biotransformation of 12C- and 2-13C-
32 labeled methyl tert-butyl ether, ethyl tert-butyl ether, and tert-butyl alcohol in rats:
33 Identification of metabolites in urine by 13C nuclear magnetic resonance and gas
34 chromatography/mass spectrometry. *Chem Res Toxicol.* 11: 651-658.
35 <http://dx.doi.org/10.1021/tx970215v>.
- 36 [Blanck, O; Fowles, J; Schorsch, F; Pallen, C; Espinasse-Lormeau, H; Schulte-Koerne, E; Totis, M;
37 Banton, M.](#) (2010). Tertiary butyl alcohol in drinking water induces phase I and II liver
38 enzymes with consequent effects on thyroid hormone homeostasis in the B6C3F1 female
39 mouse. *J Appl Toxicol.* 30: 125-132. <http://dx.doi.org/10.1002/jat.1478>.

This document is a draft for review purposes only and does not constitute Agency policy.

- 1 [Borghoff, SJ; Murphy, JE; Medinsky, MA.](#) (1996). Development of physiologically based
2 pharmacokinetic model for methyl tertiary-butyl ether and tertiary-butanol in male Fisher-
3 344 rats. *Fundam Appl Toxicol.* 30: 264-275. <http://dx.doi.org/10.1006/faat.1996.0064>.
- 4 [Borghoff, SJ; Parkinson, H; Leavens, TL.](#) (2010). Physiologically based pharmacokinetic rat model
5 for methyl tertiary-butyl ether; comparison of selected dose metrics following various
6 MTBE exposure scenarios used for toxicity and carcinogenicity evaluation. *Toxicology.* 275:
7 79-91. <http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.tox.2010.06.003>.
- 8 [Borghoff, SJ; Prescott, JS; Janszen, DB; Wong, BA; Everitt, JL.](#) (2001). alpha2u-Globulin nephropathy,
9 renal cell proliferation, and dosimetry of inhaled tert-butyl alcohol in male and female F-
10 344 rats. *Toxicol Sci.* 61: 176-186. <http://dx.doi.org/10.1093/toxsci/61.1.176>.
- 11 [Borghoff, SJ; Ring, C; Banton, MI; Leavens, TL.](#) (2016). Physiologically based pharmacokinetic model
12 for ethyl tertiary-butyl ether and tertiary-butyl alcohol in rats: Contribution of binding to
13 alpha2u-globulin in male rats and high-exposure nonlinear kinetics to toxicity and cancer
14 outcomes. *J Appl Toxicol.* <http://dx.doi.org/10.1002/jat.3412>.
- 15 [Cal/EPA](#) (California Environmental Protection Agency). (1999). Expedited evaluation of risk
16 assessment for tertiary butyl alcohol in drinking water. Available online at
17 <http://www.oehha.ca.gov/water/pals/tba.html> (accessed
- 18 [CDC](#) (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention). (2004). The health consequences of smoking: A
19 report of the Surgeon General. Washington, DC: U.S. Department of Health and Human
20 Services. http://www.cdc.gov/tobacco/data_statistics/sgr/2004/index.htm.
- 21 [Cederbaum, AI; Cohen, G.](#) (1980). Oxidative demethylation of t-butyl alcohol by rat liver
22 microsomes. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun.* 97: 730-736.
23 [http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/0006-291X\(80\)90325-3](http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/0006-291X(80)90325-3).
- 24 [Cederbaum, AI; Qureshi, A; Cohen, G.](#) (1983). Production of formaldehyde and acetone by hydroxyl-
25 radical generating systems during the metabolism of tertiary butyl alcohol. *Biochem*
26 *Pharmacol.* 32: 3517-3524. [http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/0006-2952\(83\)90297-6](http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/0006-2952(83)90297-6).
- 27 [Chen, M.](#) (2005). Amended final report of the safety assessment of t-butyl alcohol as used in
28 cosmetics [Review]. *Int J Toxicol.* 24 Suppl 2: 1-20.
29 <http://dx.doi.org/10.1080/10915810590953833>.
- 30 [Cirvello, JD; Radovsky, A; Heath, JE; Farnell, DR; III, LC.](#) (1995). Toxicity and carcinogenicity of t-
31 butyl alcohol in rats and mice following chronic exposure in drinking water. *Toxicol Ind*
32 *Health.* 11: 151-165.
- 33 [Craig, EA; Yan, Z; Zhao, QJ.](#) (2014). The relationship between chemical-induced kidney weight
34 increases and kidney histopathology in rats. *J Appl Toxicol.* 35: 729-736.
35 <http://dx.doi.org/10.1002/jat.3036>.
- 36 [Daniel, MA; Evans, MA.](#) (1982). Quantitative comparison of maternal ethanol and maternal tertiary
37 butanol diet on postnatal development. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther.* 222: 294-300.
- 38 [Faulkner, TP; Wiechart, JD; Hartman, DM; Hussain, AS.](#) (1989). The effects of prenatal tertiary
39 butanol administration in CBA/J and C57BL/6J mice. *Life Sci.* 45: 1989-1995.
- 40 [FDA](#) (U.S. Food and Drug Administration). (2011). Indirect food additives: Adjuvants, production
41 aids, and sanitizers. Surface lubricants used in the manufacture of metallic articles. 21 CFR
42 178.3910.
43 <http://www.accessdata.fda.gov/scripts/cdrh/cfdocs/cfcfr/CFRSearch.cfm?fr=178.3910>.

This document is a draft for review purposes only and does not constitute Agency policy.

- 1 [FDA](#) (U.S. Food and Drug Administration). (2015). Indirect food additives: Paper and paperboard
2 components. Defoaming agents used in coatings. 21 CFR 176.200 (pp. 1-4).
3 <http://www.accessdata.fda.gov/scripts/cdrh/cfdocs/cfcfr/CFRSearch.cfm?fr=176.200>.
- 4 [Frazier, KS; Seely, JC; Hard, GC; Betton, G; Burnett, R; Nakatsuji, S; Nishikawa, A; Durchfeld-Meyer,](#)
5 [B; Bube, A](#). (2012). Proliferative and nonproliferative lesions of the rat and mouse urinary
6 system. *Toxicol Pathol.* 40: 14S-86S. <http://dx.doi.org/10.1177/0192623312438736>.
- 7 [Gaoua, W](#). (2004a). Ethyl tertiary butyl ether (ETBE): Prenatal developmental toxicity study by the
8 oral route (gavage) in rats (pp. 1-280). (CIT Study No. 24860 RSR). unpublished study for
9 Totalfinaelf on behalf of the ETBE Producers' Consortium.
- 10 [Gaoua, W](#). (2004b). Ethyl tertiary butyl ether (ETBE): Two-generation study (reproduction and
11 fertility effects) by the oral route (gavage) in rats. (CIT Study No. 24859 RSR). unpublished
12 study for Totalfinaelf on behalf of the ETBE Producers' Consortium.
- 13 [Gehlhaus, MW, III; Gift, JS; Hogan, KA; Kopylev, L; Schlosser, PM; Kadry, A, -R](#). (2011). Approaches to
14 cancer assessment in EPA's Integrated Risk Information System [Review]. *Toxicol Appl*
15 *Pharmacol.* 254: 170-180. <http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.taap.2010.10.019>.
- 16 [Guyatt, GH; Oxman, AD; Kunz, R; Vist, GE; Falck-Ytter, Y; Schünemann, HJ](#). (2008a). What is "quality
17 of evidence" and why is it important to clinicians? [Review]. *BMJ.* 336: 995-998.
18 <http://dx.doi.org/10.1136/bmj.39490.551019.BE>.
- 19 [Guyatt, GH; Oxman, AD; Vist, GE; Kunz, R; Falck-Ytter, Y; Alonso-Coello, P; Schünemann, HJ](#). (2008b).
20 GRADE: An emerging consensus on rating quality of evidence and strength of
21 recommendations. *BMJ.* 336: 924-926. <http://dx.doi.org/10.1136/bmj.39489.470347.AD>.
- 22 [Hard, GC](#). (1986). Experimental models for the sequential analysis of chemically-induced renal
23 carcinogenesis. *Toxicol Pathol.* 14: 112-122.
- 24 [Hard, GC](#). (2008). Some aids to histological recognition of hyaline droplet nephropathy in ninety-
25 day toxicity studies. *Toxicol Pathol.* 36: 1014-1017.
26 <http://dx.doi.org/10.1177/0192623308327413>.
- 27 [Hard, GC; Banton, MI; Bretzlaff, RS; Dekant, W; Fowles, J. R.; Mallett, AK; Mcgregor, DB; Roberts, KM;](#)
28 [Sielken, RL; Valdez-Flores, C; Cohen, SM](#). (2013). Consideration of rat chronic progressive
29 nephropathy in regulatory evaluations for carcinogenicity. *Toxicol Sci.* 132: 268-275.
30 <http://dx.doi.org/10.1093/toxsci/kfs305>.
- 31 [Hard, GC; Bruner, RH; Cohen, SM; Pletcher, JM; Regan, KS](#). (2011). Renal histopathology in toxicity
32 and carcinogenicity studies with tert-butyl alcohol administered in drinking water to F344
33 rats: A pathology working group review and re-evaluation. *Regul Toxicol Pharmacol.* 59:
34 430-436. <http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.yrtph.2011.01.007>.
- 35 [Hard, GC; Johnson, KJ; Cohen, SM](#). (2009). A comparison of rat chronic progressive nephropathy
36 with human renal disease-implications for human risk assessment [Review]. *Crit Rev*
37 *Toxicol.* 39: 332-346. <http://dx.doi.org/10.1080/10408440802368642>.
- 38 [Hard, GC; Khan, KN](#). (2004). A contemporary overview of chronic progressive nephropathy in the
39 laboratory rat, and its significance for human risk assessment [Review]. *Toxicol Pathol.* 32:
40 171-180. <http://dx.doi.org/10.1080/01926230490422574>.
- 41 [Hard, GC; Seely, JC](#). (2005). Recommendations for the interpretation of renal tubule proliferative
42 lesions occurring in rat kidneys with advanced chronic progressive nephropathy (CPN).
43 *Toxicol Pathol.* 33: 641-649. <http://dx.doi.org/10.1080/01926230500299716>.

This document is a draft for review purposes only and does not constitute Agency policy.

- 1 [Hard, GC; Seely, IC.](#) (2006). Histological investigation of diagnostically challenging tubule profiles in
2 advanced chronic progressive nephropathy (CPN) in the fischer 344 RaT. *Toxicol Pathol.* 34:
3 941-948. <http://dx.doi.org/10.1080/01926230601083381>.
- 4 [Hard, GC; Wolf, DC.](#) (1999). Re-evaluation of the chloroform 2-year drinking water bioassay in
5 Osborne-Mendel rats indicates that sustained renal tubule injury is associated with renal
6 tumor development [Abstract]. *Toxicologist.* 48: 30.
- 7 [HEW](#) (U.S. Department of Health, Education and Welfare). (1964). Smoking and health: Report of
8 the advisory committee to the surgeon general of the public health service. Washington, DC:
9 U.S. Department of Health, Education, and Welfare.
10 <http://profiles.nlm.nih.gov/ps/retrieve/ResourceMetadata/NNBBMQ>.
- 11 [Hill, AB.](#) (1965). The environment and disease: Association or causation? *Proc R Soc Med.* 58: 295-
12 300.
- 13 [HSDB](#) (Hazardous Substances Data Bank). (2007). t-Butyl alcohol [Database]. Bethesda, MD:
14 National Library of Medicine. Retrieved from <http://toxnet.nlm.nih.gov>
- 15 [Huntingdon Life Sciences.](#) (2004). Reproductive and developmental toxicity screening test in rats
16 by oral gavage. (Study No. 03-4254). East Millstone, NJ: Lyondell Chemical Company.
- 17 [Hurley, PM.](#) (1998). Mode of carcinogenic action of pesticides inducing thyroid follicular cell tumors
18 in rodents. *Environ Health Perspect.* 106: 437-445.
- 19 [IARC](#) (International Agency for Research on Cancer). (1999). Methyl tert-butyl ether (group 3) (pp.
20 339-383). Lyon, France.
- 21 [IARC](#) (International Agency for Research on Cancer). (2006). IARC monographs on the evaluation of
22 carcinogenic risks to humans: Preamble. Lyon, France: World Health Organization.
23 <http://monographs.iarc.fr/ENG/Preamble/>.
- 24 [IOM](#) (Institute of Medicine). (2008). Improving the presumptive disability decision-making process
25 for veterans. In JM Samet; CC Bodurow (Eds.). Washington, DC: National Academies Press.
26 <http://dx.doi.org/10.17226/11908>.
- 27 [IPCS](#) (International Programme on Chemical Safety). (1987a). Butanols: Four isomers: 1-butanol, 2-
28 butanol, tert-butanol, isobutanol [WHO EHC]. In *Environmental Health Criteria*. Geneva,
29 Switzerland: World Health Organization.
30 <http://www.inchem.org/documents/ehc/ehc/ehc65.htm>.
- 31 [IPCS](#) (International Programme on Chemical Safety). (1987b). Tert-Butanol. In *Health and Safety*
32 *Guide*. Geneva, Switzerland: World Health Organization.
33 <http://www.inchem.org/documents/hsg/hsg/hsg007.htm>.
- 34 [Kaneko, T; Wang, PY; Sato, A.](#) (2000). Partition coefficients for gasoline additives and their
35 metabolites. *J Occup Health.* 42: 86-87. <http://dx.doi.org/10.1539/joh.42.86>.
- 36 [Leavens, TL; Borghoff, SJ.](#) (2009). Physiologically based pharmacokinetic model of methyl tertiary
37 butyl ether and tertiary butyl alcohol dosimetry in male rats based on binding to alpha2u-
38 globulin. *Toxicol Sci.* 109: 321-335. <http://dx.doi.org/10.1093/toxsci/kfp049>.
- 39 [Lee, JS; Ward, WO; Liu, J; Ren, H; Vallanat, B; Delker, D; Corton, JC.](#) (2011). Hepatic xenobiotic
40 metabolizing enzyme and transporter gene expression through the life stages of the mouse.
41 *PLoS ONE.* 6: e24381. <http://dx.doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0024381>.

- 1 [Lee, JS; Ward, WO; Wolf, DC; Allen, JW; Mills, C; Devito, MJ; Corton, JC.](#) (2008). Coordinated changes
2 in xenobiotic metabolizing enzyme gene expression in aging male rats. *Toxicol Sci.* 106:
3 263-283. <http://dx.doi.org/10.1093/toxsci/kfn144>.
- 4 [Li, Q; Kobayashi, M; Inagaki, H; Hirata, Y; Hirata, K; Shimizu, T; Wang, RS; Suda, M; Kawamoto, T;
5 Nakajima, T; Kawada, T.](#) (2011). Effects of subchronic inhalation exposure to ethyl tertiary
6 butyl ether on splenocytes in mice. *Int J Immunopathol Pharmacol.* 24: 837-847.
- 7 [Lindamood, C, III; Farnell, DR; Giles, HD; Prejean, JD; Collins, JJ; Takahashi, K; Maronpot, RR.](#) (1992).
8 Subchronic toxicity studies of t-butyl alcohol in rats and mice. *Fundam Appl Toxicol.* 19: 91-
9 100. <http://dx.doi.org/10.1093/toxsci/19.1.91>.
- 10 [Maronpot, RR; Yoshizawa, K; Nyska, A; Harada, T; Flake, G; Mueller, G; Singh, B; Ward, JM.](#) (2010).
11 Hepatic enzyme induction: histopathology [Review]. *Toxicol Pathol.* 38: 776-795.
12 <http://dx.doi.org/10.1177/0192623310373778>.
- 13 [McGregor, D.](#) (2010). Tertiary-butanol: A toxicological review [Review]. *Crit Rev Toxicol.* 40: 697-
14 727. <http://dx.doi.org/10.3109/10408444.2010.494249>.
- 15 [Melnick, R; Burns, K; Ward, J; Huff, J.](#) (2012). Chemically exacerbated chronic progressive
16 nephropathy not associated with renal tubule tumor induction in rats: An evaluation based
17 on 60 carcinogenicity studies by the National Toxicology Program. *Toxicol Sci.* 128: 346-
18 356. <http://dx.doi.org/10.1093/toxsci/kfs156>.
- 19 [Melnick, RL; Ward, JM; Huff, J.](#) (2013). War on carcinogens: Industry disputes human relevance of
20 chemicals causing cancer in laboratory animals based on unproven hypotheses, using
21 kidney tumors as an example [Editorial]. *Int J Occup Environ Health.* 19: 255-260.
22 <http://dx.doi.org/10.1179/1077352513Z.00000000090>.
- 23 [Nelson, BK; Brightwell, WS; Khan, A; Burg, JR; Goad, PT.](#) (1989). Lack of selective developmental
24 toxicity of three butanol isomers administered by inhalation to rats. *Fundam Appl Toxicol.*
25 12: 469-479. <http://dx.doi.org/10.1093/toxsci/12.3.469>.
- 26 [Nelson, BK; Brightwell, WS; Khan, A; Shaw, PB; Krieg, EF, Jr; Massari, VJ.](#) (1991). Behavioral
27 teratology investigation of tertiary-butanol administered by inhalation to rats.
28 *Pharmacopsychocologia.* 4: 1-7.
- 29 [Nihlén, A; Löf, A; Johanson, G.](#) (1995). Liquid/air partition coefficients of methyl and ethyl t-butyl
30 ethers, t-amyl methyl ether, and t-butyl alcohol. *J Expo Anal Environ Epidemiol.* 5: 573-582.
- 31 [Nihlén, A; Löf, A; Johanson, G.](#) (1998a). Controlled ethyl tert-butyl ether (ETBE) exposure of male
32 volunteers: I Toxicokinetics. *Toxicol Sci.* 46: 1-10.
33 <http://dx.doi.org/10.1006/toxs.1998.2516>.
- 34 [Nihlén, A; Löf, A; Johanson, G.](#) (1998b). Experimental exposure to methyl tertiary-butyl ether: I
35 Toxicokinetics in humans. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol.* 148: 274-280.
36 <http://dx.doi.org/10.1006/taap.1997.8333>.
- 37 [NIOSH](#) (National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health). (2005). NIOSH pocket guide to
38 chemical hazards: tert-Butyl alcohol. Atlanta, GA: Centers for Disease Control and
39 Prevention. <http://www.cdc.gov/niosh/npg/npgd0078.html>.
- 40 [NIOSH](#) (National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health). (2007). NIOSH pocket guide to
41 chemical hazards. (DHHS-2005-149. CBRNIAC-CB-112149). Cincinnati, OH.
42 <http://www.cdc.gov/niosh/docs/2005-149/>.

- 1 [NRC](#) (National Research Council). (1983). Risk Assessment in the Federal Government: Managing
2 the Process. Washington, DC: National Academy Press.
3 <http://dx.doi.org/10.1080/00139157.1983.9931232>.
- 4 [NRC](#) (National Research Council). (2009). Science and decisions: Advancing risk assessment.
5 Washington, DC: National Academy Press. <http://www.nap.edu/catalog/12209.html>.
- 6 [NRC](#) (National Research Council). (2011). Review of the Environmental Protection Agency's draft
7 IRIS assessment of formaldehyde (pp. 194). Washington, DC: National Academies Press.
8 <http://www.nap.edu/catalog/13142.html>.
- 9 [NSF International](#). (2003). t-Butanol: Oral Risk Assessment Document (CAS 75-65-0). Ann Arbor,
10 MI.
- 11 [NTP](#) (National Toxicology Program). (1995). Toxicology and carcinogenesis studies of t-butyl
12 alcohol (CAS no 75-65-0) in F344/N rats and B6C3F1 mice (Drinking water studies) (pp. 1-
13 305). (NTPTR436). Research Triangle Park, NC.
- 14 [NTP](#) (National Toxicology Program). (1997). NTP technical report on toxicity studies of t-butyl
15 alcohol (CAS no 75-65-0) administered by inhalation to F344/N rats and B6C3F1 mice (pp.
16 1-56, A51-D59). Research Triangle Park, NC.
17 http://ntp.niehs.nih.gov/ntp/htdocs/ST_rpts/tox053.pdf.
- 18 [NTP](#) (National Toxicology Program). (2015). Handbook for conducting a literature-based health
19 assessment using OHAT approach for systematic review and evidence integration. U.S. Dept.
20 of Health and Human Services, National Toxicology Program.
21 <http://ntp.niehs.nih.gov/pubhealth/hat/noms/index-2.html>.
- 22 [OSHA](#) (Occupational Safety & Health Administration). (1992). Occupational safety and health
23 guideline for tert-butyl alcohol (pp. 7). Cincinnati, OH: National Institute for Occupational
24 Safety and Health. <http://www.cdc.gov/niosh/docs/81-123/pdfs/0078.pdf>.
- 25 [OSHA](#) (Occupational Safety & Health Administration). (2006). Table Z-1: Limits for air
26 contaminants. Occupational safety and health standards, subpart Z, toxic and hazardous
27 substances. (OSHA standard 1910.1000, 29 CFR). Washington, DC: U.S. Department of
28 Labor.
29 [http://www.osha.gov/pls/oshaweb/owadisp.show_document?p_table=STANDARDS&p_id=](http://www.osha.gov/pls/oshaweb/owadisp.show_document?p_table=STANDARDS&p_id=9992)
30 [9992](http://www.osha.gov/pls/oshaweb/owadisp.show_document?p_table=STANDARDS&p_id=9992).
- 31 [Poet, TS; Valentine, JL; Borghoff, SJ](#). (1997). Pharmacokinetics of tertiary butyl alcohol in male and
32 female Fischer 344 rats. Toxicol Lett. 92: 179-186. [http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/S0378-](http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/S0378-4274(97)00056-8)
33 [4274\(97\)00056-8](http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/S0378-4274(97)00056-8).
- 34 [Qatanani, M; Zhang, J; Moore, DD](#). (2005). Role of the constitutive androstane receptor in
35 xenobiotic-induced thyroid hormone metabolism. Endocrinology. 146: 995-1002.
36 <http://dx.doi.org/10.1210/en.2004-1350>.
- 37 [Roques, BB; Leghait, J; Lacroix, MZ; Lasserre, F; Pineau, T; Viguié, C; Martin, PG](#). (2013). The nuclear
38 receptors pregnane X receptor and constitutive androstane receptor contribute to the
39 impact of fipronil on hepatic gene expression linked to thyroid hormone metabolism.
40 Biochem Pharmacol. 86: 997-1039. <http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.bcp.2013.08.012>.
- 41 [Rothman, KJ; Greenland, S](#). (1998). Modern Epidemiology (2nd ed.). Philadelphia, PA: Lippincott,
42 Williams, & Wilkins.

- 1 [Saito, A; Sasaki, T; Kasai, T; Katagiri, T; Nishizawa, T; Noguchi, T; Aiso, S; Nagano, K; Fukushima, S.](#)
2 (2013). Hepatotumorigenicity of ethyl tertiary-butyl ether with 2-year inhalation exposure
3 in F344 rats. Arch Toxicol. 87: 905-914. <http://dx.doi.org/10.1007/s00204-012-0997-x>.
- 4 [Salazar, KD; Brinkerhoff, CJ; Lee, JS; Chiu, WA.](#) (2015). Development and application of a rat PBPK
5 model to elucidate kidney and liver effects induced by ETBE and tert-butanol. Toxicol Appl
6 Pharmacol. 288: 439-452. <http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.taap.2015.08.015>.
- 7 [Scorecard.](#) (2014). t-butanol. Available online at [http://scorecard.goodguide.com/chemical-](http://scorecard.goodguide.com/chemical-profiles/summary.tcl?edf_substance_id=+75-65-0)
8 [profiles/summary.tcl?edf_substance_id=+75-65-0](http://scorecard.goodguide.com/chemical-profiles/summary.tcl?edf_substance_id=+75-65-0) (accessed
- 9 [Seely, JC; Haseman, JK; Nyska, A; Wolf, DC; Everitt, JJ; Hailey, JR.](#) (2002). The effect of chronic
10 progressive nephropathy on the incidence of renal tubule cell neoplasms in control male
11 F344 rats. Toxicol Pathol. 30: 681-686.
- 12 [Short, BG; Burnett, VL; Swenberg, JA.](#) (1986). Histopathology and cell proliferation induced by 2,2,4-
13 trimethylpentane in the male rat kidney. Toxicol Pathol. 14: 194-203.
- 14 [Short, BG; Burnett, VL; Swenberg, JA.](#) (1989). Elevated proliferation of proximal tubule cells and
15 localization of accumulated "alpha"2u-globulin in F344 rats during chronic exposure to
16 unleaded gasoline or 2,2,4-trimethylpentane. Toxicol Appl Pharmacol. 101: 414-431.
- 17 [Suzuki, M; Yamazaki, K; Kano, H; Aiso, S; Nagano, K; Fukushima, S.](#) (2012). No carcinogenicity of
18 ethyl tertiary-butyl ether by 2-year oral administration in rats. J Toxicol Sci. 37: 1239-1246.
- 19 [Swenberg, JA; Lehman-McKeeman, LD.](#) (1999). alpha 2-Urinary globulin-associated nephropathy as
20 a mechanism of renal tubule cell carcinogenesis in male rats. In CC Capen; E Dybing; JM
21 Rice; JD Wilbourn (Eds.), IARC Scientific Publications (pp. 95-118). Lyon, France:
22 International Agency for Research on Cancer.
23 [http://apps.who.int/bookorders/anglais/detart1.jsp?sesslan=1&codlan=1&codcol=73&cod](http://apps.who.int/bookorders/anglais/detart1.jsp?sesslan=1&codlan=1&codcol=73&codcch=147)
24 [cch=147](http://apps.who.int/bookorders/anglais/detart1.jsp?sesslan=1&codlan=1&codcol=73&codcch=147).
- 25 [Takahashi, K; Lindamood, C; Maronpot, R.](#) (1993). Retrospective study of possible alpha-2 mu-
26 globulin nephropathy and associated cell proliferation in male Fischer 344 rats dosed with
27 t-butyl alcohol. Environ Health Perspect. 101: 281-285.
- 28 [U.S. EPA](#) (U.S. Environmental Protection Agency). (1986a). Guidelines for mutagenicity risk
29 assessment. (EPA/630/R-98/003). Washington, DC: U.S. Environmental Protection Agency,
30 Risk Assessment Forum. <http://www.epa.gov/iris/backgrd.html>.
- 31 [U.S. EPA](#) (U.S. Environmental Protection Agency). (1986b). Guidelines for the health risk
32 assessment of chemical mixtures (pp. 1-38). (EPA/630/R-98/002). Washington, DC: U.S.
33 Environmental Protection Agency, Risk Assessment Forum.
34 <http://cfpub.epa.gov/ncea/cfm/recorddisplay.cfm?deid=22567>.
- 35 [U.S. EPA](#) (U.S. Environmental Protection Agency). (1988). Recommendations for and documentation
36 of biological values for use in risk assessment. (EPA/600/6-87/008). Cincinnati, OH: U.S.
37 Environmental Protection Agency, Office of Research and Development, Office of Health and
38 Environmental Assessment. <http://cfpub.epa.gov/ncea/cfm/recorddisplay.cfm?deid=34855>.
- 39 [U.S. EPA](#) (U.S. Environmental Protection Agency). (1991a). Alpha-2u-globulin: Association with
40 chemically induced renal toxicity and neoplasia in the male rat (pp. 1-136). (EPA/625/3-
41 91/019F). Washington, DC: U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, National Center for
42 Environmental Assessment.
43 <https://ntrl.ntis.gov/NTRL/dashboard/searchResults.xhtml?searchQuery=PB92143668>.

This document is a draft for review purposes only and does not constitute Agency policy.

- 1 [U.S. EPA](#) (U.S. Environmental Protection Agency). (1991b). Guidelines for developmental toxicity
2 risk assessment. (EPA/600/FR-91/001). Washington, DC: U.S. Environmental Protection
3 Agency, Risk Assessment Forum.
4 <http://cfpub.epa.gov/ncea/cfm/recordisplay.cfm?deid=23162>.
- 5 [U.S. EPA](#) (U.S. Environmental Protection Agency). (1994). Methods for derivation of inhalation
6 reference concentrations (RfCs) and application of inhalation dosimetry [EPA Report].
7 (EPA/600/8-90/066F). Washington, DC: U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Office of
8 Research and Development, Office of Health and Environmental Assessment, Environmental
9 Criteria and Assessment Office.
10 <http://cfpub.epa.gov/ncea/cfm/recordisplay.cfm?deid=71993>.
- 11 [U.S. EPA](#) (U.S. Environmental Protection Agency). (1996). Guidelines for reproductive toxicity risk
12 assessment. (EPA/630/R-96/009). Washington, DC: U.S. Environmental Protection Agency,
13 Risk Assessment Forum. [http://www.epa.gov/raf/publications/guidelines-reproductive-](http://www.epa.gov/raf/publications/guidelines-reproductive-tox-risk-assessment.htm)
14 [tox-risk-assessment.htm](http://www.epa.gov/raf/publications/guidelines-reproductive-tox-risk-assessment.htm).
- 15 [U.S. EPA](#) (U.S. Environmental Protection Agency). (1997). Drinking water advisory: consumer
16 acceptability advice and health effects analysis on methyl tertiary-butyl ether (MTBE) [EPA
17 Report].
- 18 [U.S. EPA](#) (U.S. Environmental Protection Agency). (1998a). Assessment of thyroid follicular cell
19 tumors [EPA Report] (pp. 1-51). (EPA/630/R-97/002). Washington, DC: U.S. Environmental
20 Protection Agency, Risk Assessment Forum.
21 <https://www.epa.gov/sites/production/files/2014-11/documents/thyroid.pdf>.
- 22 [U.S. EPA](#) (U.S. Environmental Protection Agency). (1998b). Guidelines for neurotoxicity risk
23 assessment [EPA Report]. (EPA/630/R-95/001F). Washington, DC: U.S. Environmental
24 Protection Agency, Risk Assessment Forum. [http://www.epa.gov/risk/guidelines-](http://www.epa.gov/risk/guidelines-neurotoxicity-risk-assessment)
25 [neurotoxicity-risk-assessment](http://www.epa.gov/risk/guidelines-neurotoxicity-risk-assessment).
- 26 [U.S. EPA](#) (U.S. Environmental Protection Agency). (2000a). Science policy council handbook: Risk
27 characterization (pp. 1-189). (EPA/100/B-00/002). Washington, D.C.: U.S. Environmental
28 Protection Agency, Science Policy Council. [https://www.epa.gov/risk/risk-characterization-](https://www.epa.gov/risk/risk-characterization-handbook)
29 [handbook](https://www.epa.gov/risk/risk-characterization-handbook).
- 30 [U.S. EPA](#) (U.S. Environmental Protection Agency). (2000b). Supplementary guidance for conducting
31 health risk assessment of chemical mixtures. (EPA/630/R-00/002). Washington, DC: U.S.
32 Environmental Protection Agency, Risk Assessment Forum.
33 <http://cfpub.epa.gov/ncea/cfm/recordisplay.cfm?deid=20533>.
- 34 [U.S. EPA](#) (U.S. Environmental Protection Agency). (2002). A review of the reference dose and
35 reference concentration processes. (EPA/630/P-02/002F). Washington, DC: U.S.
36 Environmental Protection Agency, Risk Assessment Forum.
37 <http://www.epa.gov/osa/review-reference-dose-and-reference-concentration-processes>.
- 38 [U.S. EPA](#) (U.S. Environmental Protection Agency). (2005a). Guidelines for carcinogen risk
39 assessment [EPA Report]. (EPA/630/P-03/001F). Washington, DC: U.S. Environmental
40 Protection Agency, Risk Assessment Forum. [http://www2.epa.gov/osa/guidelines-](http://www2.epa.gov/osa/guidelines-carcinogen-risk-assessment)
41 [carcinogen-risk-assessment](http://www2.epa.gov/osa/guidelines-carcinogen-risk-assessment).
- 42 [U.S. EPA](#) (U.S. Environmental Protection Agency). (2005b). Supplemental guidance for assessing
43 susceptibility from early-life exposure to carcinogens (pp. 1-125). (EPA/630/R-03/003F).

- 1 Washington, DC: U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Risk Assessment Forum.
2 https://www3.epa.gov/airtoxics/childrens_supplement_final.pdf.
- 3 [U.S. EPA](#) (U.S. Environmental Protection Agency). (2006a). Approaches for the application of
4 physiologically based pharmacokinetic (PBPK) models and supporting data in risk
5 assessment (Final Report) [EPA Report]. (EPA/600/R-05/043F). Washington, DC: U.S.
6 Environmental Protection Agency, Office of Research and Development, National Center for
7 Environmental assessment.
8 <http://cfpub.epa.gov/ncea/cfm/recordisplay.cfm?deid=157668>.
- 9 [U.S. EPA](#) (U.S. Environmental Protection Agency). (2006b). A framework for assessing health risk of
10 environmental exposures to children (pp. 1-145). (EPA/600/R-05/093F). Washington, DC:
11 U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Office of Research and Development, National Center
12 for Environmental Assessment.
13 <http://cfpub.epa.gov/ncea/cfm/recordisplay.cfm?deid=158363>.
- 14 [U.S. EPA](#) (U.S. Environmental Protection Agency). (2009). EPA's Integrated Risk Information
15 System: Assessment development process [EPA Report]. Washington, DC.
16 <http://epa.gov/iris/process.htm>.
- 17 [U.S. EPA](#) (U.S. Environmental Protection Agency). (2010). Integrated science assessment for carbon
18 monoxide [EPA Report]. (EPA/600/R-09/019F). Research Triangle Park, NC: U.S.
19 Environmental Protection Agency, Office of Research and Development, National Center for
20 Environmental Assessment.
21 <http://cfpub.epa.gov/ncea/cfm/recordisplay.cfm?deid=218686>.
- 22 [U.S. EPA](#) (U.S. Environmental Protection Agency). (2011). Recommended use of body weight 3/4 as
23 the default method in derivation of the oral reference dose. (EPA/100/R11/0001).
24 Washington, DC: U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Risk Assessment Forum, Office of
25 the Science Advisor. <http://www.epa.gov/raf/publications/interspecies-extrapolation.htm>.
- 26 [U.S. EPA](#) (U.S. Environmental Protection Agency). (2012a). Advances in inhalation gas dosimetry for
27 derivation of a reference concentration (RfC) and use in risk assessment (pp. 1-140).
28 (EPA/600/R-12/044). Washington, DC.
29 <https://cfpub.epa.gov/ncea/risk/recordisplay.cfm?deid=244650&CFID=50524762&CFTOKEN=17139189>.
- 30
- 31 [U.S. EPA](#) (U.S. Environmental Protection Agency). (2012b). Benchmark dose technical guidance.
32 (EPA/100/R-12/001). Washington, DC: U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Risk
33 Assessment Forum. <https://www.epa.gov/risk/benchmark-dose-technical-guidance>.
- 34 [U.S. EPA](#) (U.S. Environmental Protection Agency). (2012c). Releases: Facility Report. Toxics Release
35 Inventory. Available online at http://iaspub.epa.gov/triexplorer/tri_release.chemical
36 (accessed
- 37 [U.S. EPA](#) (U.S. Environmental Protection Agency). (2012d). Toxicological review of tetrahydrofuran.
38 In support of summary information on the integrated risk information system (IRIS) (pp. 1-
39 207). (EPA/635/R-11/006F). Washington, DC.
- 40 [U.S. EPA](#) (U.S. Environmental Protection Agency). (2014). Chemical Data Reporting 2012, reported
41 in the Chemical Data Access Tool. Available online at
42 <http://www.epa.gov/oppt/cdr/index.html> (accessed

- 1 [U.S. EPA](#) (U.S. Environmental Protection Agency). (2016). TRI explorer (2014 dataset released
2 March 2016) [Database]. Retrieved from <https://www.epa.gov/triexplorer>
- 3 [Williams, TM; Borghoff, SJ](#). (2001). Characterization of tert-butyl alcohol binding to "alpha"2u-
4 globulin in F-344 rats. *Toxicol Sci.* 62: 228-235. <http://dx.doi.org/10.1093/toxsci/62.2.228>.
- 5 [Yuan, Y; Wang, HF; Sun, HF; Du, HF; Xu, LH; Liu, YF; Ding, XF; Fu, DP; Liu, KX](#). (2007). Adduction of
6 DNA with MTBE and TBA in mice studied by accelerator mass spectrometry. *Environ*
7 *Toxicol.* 22: 630-635. <http://dx.doi.org/10.1002/tox.20295>.
- 8